ALTEA XL

owner's manual

SEAT
auto emoción

ALTEA XL
ALTEA XL

Foreword

This owner's manual and the corresponding supplements should be read carefully to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

Also, the regular care, maintenance and correct handling of the vehicle will contribute to preserve its value.

For safety reasons, note the information concerning accessories, modifications and parts exchange.

If selling the vehicle, give all of the onboard documentation to the new owner as this should be kept with the vehicle.

Contents

The structure of this manual 5

Content 6

Safety First 7

Safe driving 7
- Brief introduction 7
- Proper sitting position for occupants 10
- Pedal area 16
- Stowing luggage 17

Seat belts 19
- Introduction 19
- Why wear seat belts? 21
- Seat belts 24
- Belt tension devices 28

Airbag system 30
- Brief introduction 30
- Front airbags 34
- Side airbags* 37
- Curtain airbags 41
- Deactivating airbags* 44

Child safety 46
- Brief introduction 46
- Child seats 48
- Securing child seats 50

Operating instructions 55

Cockpit 55
- Overview 55
- Instruments 56
- Digital display in the instrument panel 59
- Instrument panel menus 65
- Warning lamps 72

Steering wheel controls 84
- Using these instructions 84
- Audio system 84
- Radio navigation system 88
- Steering wheel lighting controls 92

Opening and closing 93
- Central locking 93
- Keys 99
- Radio frequency remote control 100
- Anti-theft alarm system* 102
- Tailgate 104
- Windows 106
- Sliding/tilting roof* 108

Lights and visibility 111
- Lights 111
- Interior lights 117
- Visibility 119
- Windscreen wipers 120
- Mirrors 124

Seats and stowage 127
- The importance of correct seat adjustment 127
- Headrests 128
- Front seats 130
- Rear seat bench 131
- Stowage compartments 133
- Ashtrays*, cigarette lighter* and electrical sockets 142
- First-aid kit, warning triangle, fire extinguisher 145
- Luggage compartment 146

Air conditioning 149
- Heating 149
- Climatic* 151
- 2C-Climatronic* 154
- General notes 158

Driving 159
- Steering 159
- Safety 160
- Ignition lock 161
- Starting and stopping the engine 162
- Manual gearbox 165
- Automatic gearbox* / DSG automatic gearbox* 166
- Handbrake 171
- Acoustic parking aid system* 172
- Cruise control system (CCS)* 174

Tips and Maintenance 179

Intelligent technology 179
- Brakes 179
- Anti-lock brake system and traction control M-ABS (ABS and TCS) 180
- Electronic stabilisation program (ESP)* 181

Driving and the environment 183
- Running-in 183
- Exhaust gas emission control system 184
- Driving abroad 185

Trailer towing 188
Driving economically and with respect for the environment 190

Cleaning and caring for your vehicle 192
General notes 192
Care of the vehicle exterior 193
Care of the vehicle interior 198

Accessories, parts replacement and modifications 201
Accessories and parts 201
Modifications 201
Roof aerial* 202
Mobile telephones and two-way radios 202
Fitting a towing bracket* 203

Checking and refilling levels 205
Refuelling 205
Petrol 206
Diesel 207
Working in the engine compartment 208
Engine oil 211
Coolant 215
Washer fluid and windscreen wiper blades 218
Brake fluid 221
Battery 223
Wheels 225

If and when 232
Tools, tyre repair kit and spare wheel 232
Wheel change 234
Tyre repair kit (Tyre-Mobility-System)* 240
Fuses 242
Bulb change 249
Jump-starting 258
Towing and tow-starting 261

Technical Data 265

General notes on the technical data 265
What you should be aware of 265
How are the figures measured? 267
Towing a trailer 268
Wheels 268

Technical Data 270
Checking fluid levels 270
Petrol engine 1.4 litre 63 kW (86 bhp) 271
Petrol engine 1.6 litre 75 kW (102 bhp) 272
Petrol engine 2.0l 110 kW (150 bhp) 273
Petrol engine 2.0 litre 147 kW (200 hp). Manual 274
Petrol engine 2.0 litre 147 kW (200 hp). Automatic 276
Diesel engine 1.9 TDI 77 kW (105 bhp). With/without DPF 277
Diesel engine 2.0l 103 kW (140 bhp) With/without DPF 279
Diesel engine 2.0l 103 kW (140 bhp) Automatic With/without DPF 280
Diesel engine 2.0l 100 kW (136 bhp) 282
Diesel engine 2.0l 100 kW (136 bhp) Automatic 283
Diesel engine 2.0l 125 kW (170 bhp) 284
Dimensions and capacities 286

Index 287

The structure of this manual

Before reading this manual it must be understood:

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described here will not be available until a later date, or is available only in certain markets.

Because this is a general manual for the ALTEA XL, some of the equipment and functions that are described in this manual are not included in all types or variants of the model or model year; they may vary or be modified in accordance with technical or market requirements or model year; this can not be interpreted as dishonest advertising.

Illustrations are intended as a general guide, and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle in some details.

The **direction indications** (left, right, front, rear) appearing in this manual refer to the normal forward working direction of the vehicle except when otherwise indicated.

The **equipment marked with an asterisk*** is fitted as standard only in determined model versions, is supplied as optional only for some versions or model year, or is only offered in different countries.

® All registered marks are indicated with ®. Even if the copyright symbol does not appear this does not mean that the mark is not copyrighted.

▶ The section is continued on the following page.

■ Indicates the **end of a section**.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.

Caution

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature. In certain countries there may be different units of measurement than the ones used in this manual. For example, miles and gallons may be used instead of kilometres and litres. ■

Content

This manual is structured to give you the information you need as quickly and clearly as possible. The contents of this Manual are grouped into relatively short **sections** making up **chapters** (e.g. “Air conditioning”). The entire manual is divided into five large chapters:

1. Safety First

Information on the vehicle equipment relating to passive safety such as seat belts, airbags, seats, etc.

2. Operating instructions

Information about the distribution of controls in the driver position of the vehicle, about the seat adjustment possibilities, how to create a suitable climate in the passenger compartment, etc.

3. Tips and Maintenance

Advice relating to driving, care and maintenance of your vehicle and certain problems which you may solve yourself.

4. Technical Data

Figures, data, dimensions and measurements (for example fuel consumption) of your vehicle.

5. Alphabetic index

At the end of this manual there is a detailed alphabetical index, this will help you to rapidly find the information you require. ■

Safety First

Safe driving

Brief introduction

Dear SEAT Driver

Safety first!

This chapter contains important information, advice, suggestions and warnings that should be read and followed in the interest of your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

WARNING

- **This manual contains important information concerning vehicle handling both by passengers and the driver. The other booklets in the vehicle wallet also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the complete vehicle wallet is always in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle to others.** ■

Safety equipment

The safety equipment is a part of the occupant protection system and can reduce the risk of injury during an accident.

Never “gamble” with your safety and the safety of your passengers. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment could reduce the risk of injury. The following list includes most of the safety equipment in your SEAT:

- Optimised three-point seat belts,
- Belt tension limiter for the front and rear seats,
- belt tension devices for the front seats,
- belt height adjustment for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seat backrests,
- curtain airbags,
- crash-active front head restraints*,
- “ISOFIX” anchor points for “ISOFIX” child seats on the outer seats in the second row,
- height-adjustable head restraints,
- head restraints with in-use position and non-use position,
- adjustable steering column.

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in accident situations. But this safety equipment cannot help you or your passengers if you or your ▶

passengers assume an incorrect sitting position or do not properly adjust or use this equipment.

Therefore, information is provided about why this equipment is so important, how it protects you, what you have to observe when using it and how you and your passengers can achieve the greatest possible benefit from the safety equipment fitted. This manual includes important warnings that you and your passengers should observe in order to reduce the risk of injury.

Safety is everyone's business! ■

Before every trip

The driver bears the responsibility for his passengers and the operational worthiness of the vehicle.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

- Ensure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals operate flawlessly.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.
- Securely restrain all parcels ⇒ page 17.
- Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.
- Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors properly for your size.
- Ensure that the passengers in the rear seats always have the head restraints in the in-use position ⇒ page 14.
- Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly applied seat belts ⇒ page 46.
- Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position ⇒ page 10.
- Always fasten your seat belt correctly before driving off. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly ⇒ page 19. ■

What affects driving safety?

Driving safety is largely determined by your driving style and the personal behaviour of all occupants.

As driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers. When your concentration or driving safety is affected, you endanger yourself as well as others on the road ⇒ ⚠, for this reason:

- Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the traffic around you, e.g. by passengers or telephone conversations.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs).
- Observe traffic laws and speed limits. ▶

- Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions.
- When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.
- If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or are under pressure of time.

WARNING

When driving safety is impaired during a trip, the risk of injury and accidents increases. ■

Proper sitting position for occupants

Proper sitting position for driver

The proper sitting position for the driver is important for safe and relaxed driving.

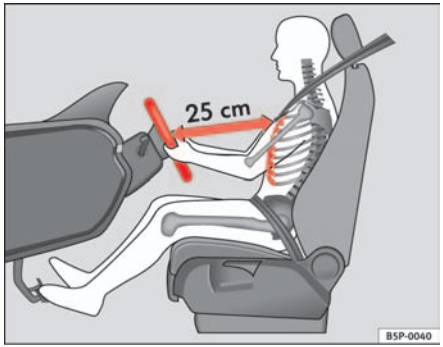

Fig. 1 The proper distance between driver and steering wheel

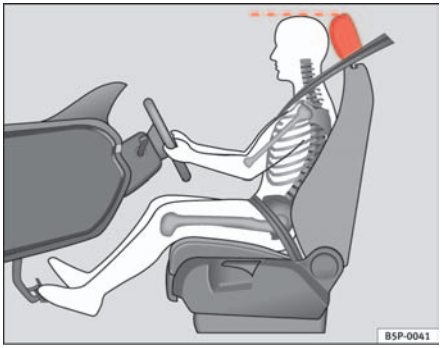

Fig. 2 Proper head restraint position for driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the driver:

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and the centre of your chest ⇒ fig. 1.

– Move the driver's seat forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly angled ⇒ ⚠.

– Ensure that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ⇒ fig. 2.

– Move the backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇒ page 19.

– Keep both feet in the foot well so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.

Adjustment of the driver's seat ⇒ page 127.

WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the driver can lead to severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the driver's seat so that there is at least 25 cm distance between the centre of the chest and the hub of the steering wheel ⇒ page 10, fig. 1. If you are sitting nearer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a qualified workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. This reduces the risk of injury when the driver airbag is triggered.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, you may sustain injuries to the arms, hands and head.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve optimal protection.** ■

Proper sitting position for front passenger

The front passenger must sit at least 25 cm away from the dash panel so that the airbag can provide the greatest possible protection in the event that it is triggered.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following adjustments for the front passenger:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible ⇒ ⚠.

– Move the backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head ⇒ page 13.

– Keep both feet in the foot well in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇒ page 19.

It is possible to deactivate the passenger airbag in **exceptional circumstances** ⇒ page 25.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇒ page 130.

WARNING

- **An incorrect sitting position of the front passenger can lead to severe injuries.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Adjust the front passenger seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the dash panel. If you are sitting nearer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact a qualified workshop. The workshop will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **Always keep your feet in the foot well when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the instrument panel, out the window or on the seat. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in the event of a braking manoeuvre or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the front passenger during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never travel with the backrest tilted far back! The airbag system and seat belts can only provide optimal protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the front passenger is wearing his or her seat belt properly. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve maximum protection.** ■

Correct sitting position for passengers in the rear seats

Passengers in the rear seats must sit up straight, keep their feet in the foot wells and wear their seat belts properly.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, passengers on the rear bench seat must observe the following:

– Adjust the headrest to the correct position ⇒ page 14.

– Keep both feet in the foot well in front of the rear seat.

– Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇒ page 19.

– Use an appropriate child restraint system when you take children in the vehicle ⇒ page 46.

WARNING

- **If the passengers on the rear seat are not sitting properly, they could sustain severe injuries.**
- **Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve maximum protection.**
- **Seat belts can only provide optimal protection when backrests are in an upright position and the passengers are wearing their seat belts properly. If passengers on the rear seat are not sitting in an upright position, the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web increases.** ■

Correct adjustment of front seat head restraints

Properly adjusted headrests are an important part of occupant protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.

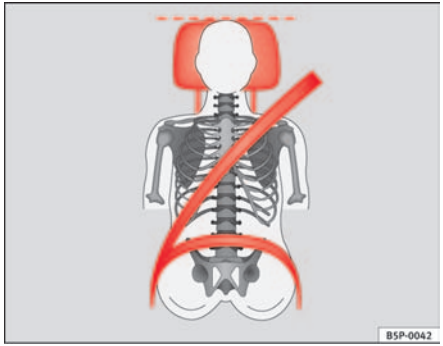

Fig. 3 Properly adjusted head restraint viewed from the front

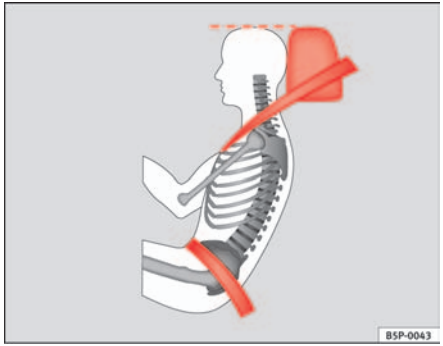

Fig. 4 Properly adjusted head restraint viewed from the side

Adjust the head restraint properly to achieve maximum protection.

– Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and, at the very least, at eye level ⇒ fig. 3 and ⇒ fig. 4.

Adjusting the headrests ⇒ page 127.

WARNING

- **Travelling with the headrests removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints could result in death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted headrests also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The headrests must always be adjusted according to the occupant's size.** ■

Headrests in use*

Vehicle occupants are pressed into their seats during a rear end collision. The resulting body pressure on the backrest activates the crash-active head restraint* on the front seat, which moves rapidly forwards and upwards at the same time. This movement reduces the distance between the occupant's head and the head rest, thus reducing the risk of head injuries such as brain trauma. ▶

WARNING

Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.

- **Incorrectly adjusted head restraints could result in death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted headrests also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The headrests must always be adjusted according to the occupant's size.**

Note

The crash-active head restraints* could also be triggered if a vehicle occupant applies a high level of pressure on the backrest (e.g. by "falling" back into the seat when entering the vehicle) or if pressure is applied to a front seat head restraint from the rear. This accidental activation is, however, not dangerous as the crash-active head restraints will return to the original position immediately and are thus once again ready. ■

Correct adjustment of rear seat head restraints

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of the occupant protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations

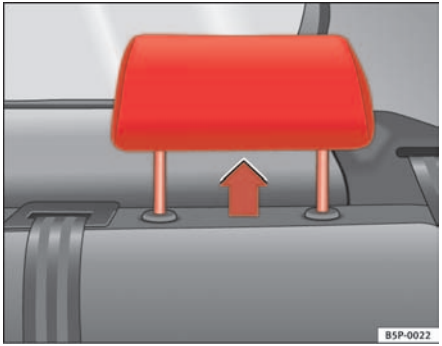

Fig. 5 Head restraints in correct position

Fig. 6 Head restraint position warning label

Rear outer seat head restraints

– The rear outer seat head restraints have 3 positions.

– Two positions for **use** ⇒ page 14, fig. 5. In these positions, the head restraints are used normally, protecting passengers along with the rear seat belts.

– And one position for **non-use**.

– To fit the head restraints in position for use, pull on the edges with both hands in the direction of the arrow.

Centre rear head restraint

– The centre head restraint only has two positions, **in-use** (head restraint up) and **non-use** (head restraint down).

WARNING

- **Under no circumstances should the rear passengers travel while the head restraints are in the non-use position. See the warning label located on the rear side fixed window ⇒ page 14, fig. 6.**
- **Do not swap the centre rear head restraint with either of the outer seat rear head restraints.**
- **Injury risk in case of an accident!**

Caution

Note the instructions on the adjustment of the head restraints ⇒ page 128. ■

Examples of incorrect sitting positions

An incorrect sitting position can lead to severe injuries to occupants.

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only when the belt webs are properly positioned. Incorrect sitting positions substantially reduce the protective function of seat belts and increase the risk of injury due to incorrect belt web position. As the driver, you are responsible for all vehicle occupants, especially children.

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ⇒ ⚠.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that could be dangerous for all occupants. The list is not complete, but we would like to make you aware of this issue.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle,
- never stand on the seats,
- never kneel on the seats,
- never tilt your backrest far to the rear,
- never lean against the dash panel,
- never lie on the rear bench,
- never sit on the front edge of a seat,
- never sit sideways,
- never lean out of a window,
- never put your feet out of a window,
- never put your feet on the dash panel,
- never put your feet on the surface of a seat,

- never travel in a foot well,
- never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt,
- never carry any person in the luggage compartment.

WARNING

- **Every incorrect sitting position increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Sitting in an incorrect position exposes the occupants to severe injuries if airbags deploy, striking an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.**
- **Before the vehicle moves, assume the proper sitting position and maintain it throughout the trip. Before every trip, instruct your passengers to assume the proper sitting position and to maintain it during the trip ⇒ page 10, "Proper sitting position for occupants".** ■

Pedal area

Pedals

The operation and freedom of movement of all pedals must never be impaired by objects or floor mats.

– Ensure that you can always press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals unimpaired to the floor.

– Ensure that the pedals can return unimpaired to their initial positions.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the foot well.

If a brake circuit fails, the brake pedal must be free to move further than normal in order to bring the vehicle to a stop.

Wear suitable shoes

Always wear shoes which support your feet properly and give you a good feel for the pedals.

WARNING

- **Restricting pedal operation can lead to critical situations while driving.**
- **Never place objects in the driver foot well. An object could move into the pedal area and impair pedal operation. In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, you will not be able to operate the brake, clutch or accelerator pedal. Risk of accident!** ■

Floor mats on the driver side

Only floor mats may be used which can be securely fastened in the foot well and do not impair operation of the pedals.

– Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened during the trip and do not obstruct the pedals ⇒ ⚠.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals clear and which are secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a qualified dealership.

WARNING

- **If the pedals are obstructed, you could cause an accident. Risk of serious injuries.**
- **Ensure that the floor mats are always securely attached.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never lay or fit floor mats or other floor coverings over the original floor mats. This would reduce the pedal area and could obstruct the pedals. Risk of accident.** ■

Stowing luggage

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other loose objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment.

Unsecured objects which shift back and forth could impair the driving safety or driving characteristics of the vehicle by shifting the centre of gravity.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Lay and stow heavy luggage as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Stow heavy luggage as low as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Secure heavy objects to the fitted fastening rings ⇒ page 18.

WARNING

- **Loose luggage and other objects in the luggage compartment can cause serious injuries.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always stow objects in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings.**
- **Use suitable specialist straps to secure heavy objects.**
- **During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects can be thrown forward, injuring vehicle occupants. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag. If this happens, objects can be transformed into “missiles”. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect the vehicle’s handling and lead to an accident. Therefore, it is essential to adjust your speed and driving style accordingly, to avoid accidents.**
- **Never exceed the allowed axle loads or allowed maximum weight. If the allowed axle load or the allowed total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially when the tailgate is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment closing the door behind them; they will remain trapped without help and there is a mortal risk.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Close and lock both the tailgate and all the doors when you leave the vehicle. Before you lock the vehicle, make sure that there are no adults or children in the vehicle.**
- **Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. Every passenger must be properly belted in** **⇒ page 19****.**

Note

- Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slits in the side trim of the luggage compartment. Ensure that the ventilation slits are never covered.

- Straps for securing the load to the fastening rings are commercially available. ■

Fastening rings

There are four fastening rings in the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects.

– Always use suitable and undamaged straps to secure luggage and other objects to the fastening rings ⇒ ⚠ in “Loading the luggage compartment” on page 17.

– Pull up the fastening rings to attach the straps.

During a collision or an accident, even small and light objects can build up so much energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle.

For example: an object weighing 4.5 kg is lying unsecured in the vehicle. During a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, this object generates a force corresponding to 20 times its weight. That means that the effective weight of the object increases to about 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries which might be sustained if this “projectile” strikes an occupant as it flies through the passenger compartment. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if a loose object is struck by an inflating airbag.

⚠ WARNING

- **If pieces of baggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged retaining cords, injuries could result in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **To prevent pieces of luggage or other objects from flying forward, always use appropriate retaining cords which are secured to the fastening rings.**
- **Never secure a child seat on the fastening rings.** ■

Seat belts

Introduction

Always fasten seat belts before driving!

Properly worn seat belts can save lives!

In this chapter you will learn why seat belts are so important, how they work and how to properly fasten, adjust and wear them.

– Read and observe all the information as well as the warnings in this chapter.

WARNING

- **If the seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases.**
- **Properly worn seat belts can reduce severe injuries in the event of sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents. Therefore, you and your passengers should always wear the seat belts properly as long as the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Pregnant women or persons with physical disabilities must also use seat belts. Like all other occupants, these persons can also sustain severe injuries if they are not wearing their seat belts properly.** ■

Number of seats

Your vehicle has **five** passenger places, two individual front seats and three places on the rear seat. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

WARNING

- **Never transport more people than there are seats available in the vehicle.**
- **Every occupant in the vehicle must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system.** ■

Seat belt warning lamp*

The warning lamp acts as a reminder to the driver to fasten the seat belt.

Before you drive:

– Always fasten your seat belt correctly before driving off.

– Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.

– Protect your children with child restraint systems appropriate for the size and age of the children.

The warning lamp in the instrument panel lights up [1] if the driver or passenger seat belt is not fastened when the ignition is switched on. In addition, an acoustic signal is given for a few seconds and a text is displayed on the combi-instrument asking you to **fasten your seat belt**[1].

The warning lamp* does not go out until the driver seat belt is fastened while the ignition is switched on. ■

[1] Depending on the model version

Why wear seat belts?

Frontal collisions and the laws of physics

In the event of a frontal collision, a large amount of kinetic energy is generated.

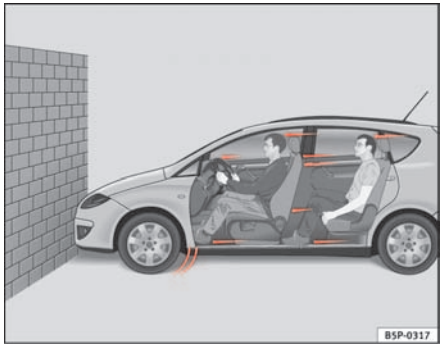

Fig. 7 Passengers of a vehicle heading for a brick wall. They are not wearing seat belts.

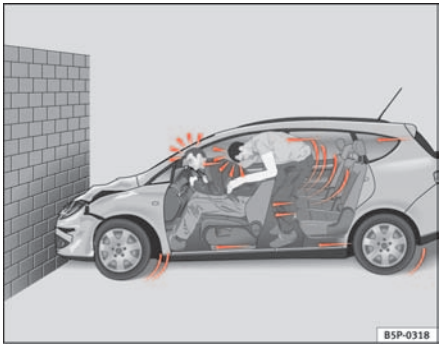

Fig. 8 The vehicle with unbelted occupants strikes the wall.

The action of the laws of physics in the case of a frontal collision may be explained in the following way: As the vehicle moves ⇒ fig. 7 the vehicle and the passengers alike accumulate a stored energy called “kinetic energy”.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be “released” in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25km/h to 50km/h, for example, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of four.

Because the passengers in our example are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy has to be absorbed at the point of impact ⇒ fig. 8.

Even at speeds of 30km/h to 50km/h, the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1,000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

Passengers not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a frontal collision they will continue to move forward at the speed their vehicle ▶

was travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to frontal accidents, but also to all accidents and collisions. ■

The danger of not using the seat belt

Many people believe that the occupants can protect themselves with their hands in a minor collision, this is false.

Fig. 9 A driver not wearing a seat belt is thrown forward violently.

Fig. 10 The unbelted rear passenger is thrown forward violently, hitting the driver wearing a seat belt.

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers are thrown forward and will make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen or whatever else is in the way ⇒ fig. 9.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. When deployed, airbags provide only additional protection. All occupants (including the driver) must be wearing seat belts properly during the trip. This will reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of an accident – regardless of whether an airbag is fitted for the seat.

Note that airbags can be triggered only once. To achieve the best possible protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly so that you will be protected in accidents in which no airbag is deployed.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently in an accident. Rear passengers who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the front occupants ⇒ fig. 10. ■

Seat belts protect

Passengers not wearing seat belts risk severe injuries in the event of an accident.

Fig. 11 Driver protected by the properly worn seat belt during a sudden braking manoeuvre.

Properly worn seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting positions and substantially reduce the kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements that could lead to severe injuries. In addition, properly worn seat belts reduce the danger of being thrown from the car.

Passengers wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb the kinetic energy generated in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the forces acting on the occupants and consequently the risk of injury.

Our examples describe frontal collisions. Of course, properly worn seat belts reduce substantially the risk of injury in all other types of accidents. This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown properly worn seat belts to be an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some frontal accidents. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal collisions, minor side collisions, rear collisions, rolls or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, you should always wear your seat belt and ensure that your passengers have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off! ■

Safety notes on using seat belts

If seat belts are used correctly, they can reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always wear the seat belt as described in this booklet.

– Ensure that the seat belts can be fastened at all times and are not damaged.

WARNING

- **If the seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases. The optimal protection from seat belts can be achieved only if you use them properly.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Fasten your seat belt before every trip - even when driving in town. That applies also to your front and rear passengers – danger of injury!
- The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the belt web is not positioned correctly.
- Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt.
- Keep both feet in the foot well in front of your seat as long as the vehicle is in motion.
- Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of fatal injury.
- The belt webbing must never be twisted while it is being worn.
- The belt webbing should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.
- Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.
- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts, reducing their capacity to protect.
- The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging securely.
- Never use seat belt clips, retaining rings or similar instruments to alter the position of the belt webbing.
- Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.
- Seat belts that have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.
- The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly ⇒ page 200. ■

Seat belts

Seat belt adjustment

The seat belts for the front and rear occupants are locked into position by a latch.

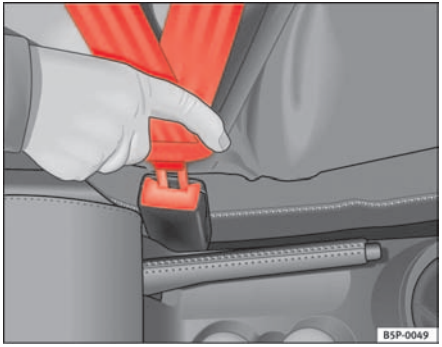

Fig. 12 Belt buckle and latch plate of seat belt

The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if the belt web is not positioned correctly.

– Adjust the seat and head restraint correctly.

– To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.

– Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ page 24, fig. 12.

– Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

The seat belts are equipped with an automatic retractor on the shoulder strap. Full freedom of movement is permitted when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly. However, during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the automatic retractor on the shoulder belt is locked.

The automatic belt retractors on the front seats are fitted with belt tension devices ⇒ page 28.

WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The seat belts offer best protection only when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.**
- **Never put the latch plate in the buckle of another seat. If you do this, the seat belt will not protect you properly and the risk of injury is increased.**
- **If an occupant is incorrectly belted in, the belt cannot protect him or her properly. An incorrectly positioned belt web can cause extremely severe injuries.**
- **Always engage the retractor lock when you are securing a child seat in group 0, 0+ or 1 ⇒ page 46.** ■

Seat belt position

Seat belts offer their maximum protection only when they are properly positioned.

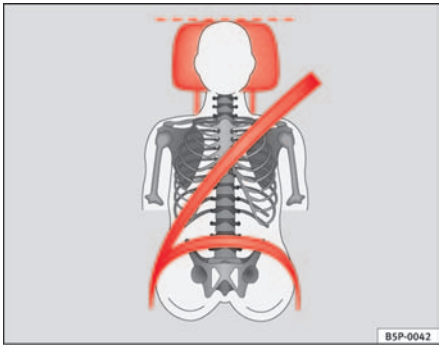

Fig. 13 Correct belt web and head rest positions, viewed from front

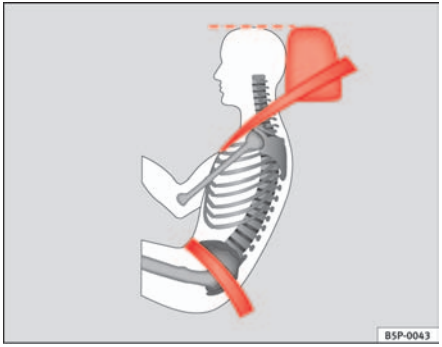

Fig. 14 Correct belt web and head rest positions, viewed from side

The following features are available to adjust the seat belt in the shoulder region:

- belt height adjustment for the front seats.
- front seat height adjustment*.

WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the torso ⇒ page 25, fig. 13.**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the pelvis ⇒ page 25, fig. 14. Pull the belt tight, if necessary to take up any slack.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 23.** ■

Pregnant women must also fasten their seat belts properly

The best protection for the unborn child is for the mother to wear the seat belt properly at all times during the pregnancy.

Fig. 15 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

The seat belt provides maximum protection only when the belt web is properly positioned ⇒ page 25.

– Adjust the front seat and head rest correctly ⇒ page 10.

– Holding the latch plate, pull the belt evenly across your chest and as low as possible over the pelvis ⇒ fig. 15.

– Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the corresponding seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ ⚠.

– Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle. ▶

WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must lie as low as possible over the pelvis, never across the stomach, and always lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the abdomen.**
- **Read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 23.** ■

Seat belt release

The seat belt must not be unfastened until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

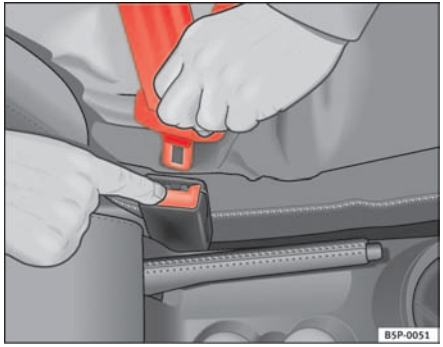

Fig. 16 Removing latch plate from buckle

– Press the red button on the belt buckle ⇒ fig. 16. The latch plate is released and springs out ⇒ ⚠.

– Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and the trim is not damaged

WARNING

Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. If you do, you increase the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries. ■

Adjusting the seat belt height

Seat belt height adjusters can be used to adjust the position of the seat belt at the shoulder.

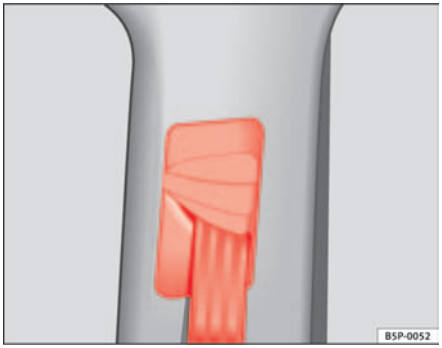

Fig. 17 Location of the belt height adjuster

The seat belt adjuster for the front seats can be used to adjust the proper belt position at the shoulder. ▶

– Press the upper part of the shoulder belt guide and hold it in this position ⇒ page 27, fig. 17.

– Move the shoulder belt guide up or down until you have adjusted the seat belt ⇒ page 25.

– After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely. ■

Incorrectly fastened seat belts

Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause severe injuries.

Seat belts can provide optimal protection only if the belt web is properly worn. The seat belts must be fastened exactly in the order described in this chapter. An incorrect sitting position impairs substantially the protection a seat belt offers and can lead to severe or fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a deploying airbag strikes an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. As driver, you are responsible for all vehicle occupants, especially children. Therefore:

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while travelling ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **An incorrectly worn seat belt increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Before every trip, instruct your passengers to adjust their seat belts properly and to wear them during the trip.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of seat belts ⇒ page 23.** ■

Belt tension devices

Function of the belt tension device

During a frontal collision, the seat belts on the front seats are retracted automatically.

The seat belts for the front occupants are equipped with belt tension devices. Sensors will only trigger the belt tension devices during severe head-on, lateral and rear collisions, and only if the seat belt is actually being worn. This retracts and tightens the seat belts, reducing the forward motion of the occupants.

The belt tension device can be triggered only once.

The belt tension devices will not be triggered in the event of a light frontal, side or rear collision, if the vehicle overturns, or in situations where no large forces act on the front, side or rear of the vehicle.

Note

- If the belt tension devices are triggered, a fine dust is produced. This is normal and is no indication that there was a fire in the vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified workshop is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you. ■

Service and disposal of belt tension devices

The belt tension devices are components of the seat belts that are installed in the seats of your vehicle. If you work on the belt tension devices or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, the seat ▶

belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tension devices function incorrectly or not at all.

So that the effectiveness of the belt tension device is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations, which are known to the qualified workshops, must be observed.

WARNING

- **If repairs are not carried out by a professional, or if the belt tension devices are used incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. The belt tension devices may fail to trigger or may trigger in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the belt tension devices or seat belts.**
- **The belt tension device and seat belt including its automatic retractor cannot be repaired.**
- **Any work on the belt tension devices and seat belts, including the removal and refitting of system parts in conjunction with other repair work, must be performed by a qualified workshop only.**
- **The belt tension devices will only provide protection for one accident and must be changed it they have been activated.** ■

Airbag system

Brief introduction

Why wear a seat belt and assume the correct sitting position?

For the inflating airbags to achieve the best protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly and the correct sitting position must be assumed.

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, please ensure the following before you drive:

- Always wear the seat belt properly ⇒ page 19.
- Adjust the driver seat and the steering wheel correctly ⇒ page 10.
- Adjust the front passenger seat correctly ⇒ page 11.
- Adjust the head restraint seat correctly ⇒ page 13.
- Use the correct child restraint system to protect children in your vehicle ⇒ page 46.

The airbag deploys in fractions of a second and with a high velocity. If you have assumed an incorrect seating position at that moment, you could sustain critical injuries. Therefore, it is essential that all occupants maintain a correct sitting position while travelling.

Braking heavily the moment before an accident may cause an occupant not wearing a seat belt to be thrown forward into the area of the deploying airbag.

In this case, the inflating airbag may inflict critical or fatal injuries upon the occupant. This applies particularly to children.

Always maintain the greatest possible distance between yourself and the front airbag. This way, the front airbags can completely deploy when triggered, providing their maximum protection.

The most important factors for triggering the airbag are the type of accident, the angle of impact and the vehicle speed.

Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision and detected by the control unit. If the vehicle deceleration occurring during the collision and measured by the control unit remains below the specified reference values, the front, side and/or curtain airbag will not be triggered. Take into account that the visible damage in a vehicle following an accident, for whatever reason, are not an indication as to why the airbags were triggered.

WARNING

- **Wearing the seat belt incorrectly or assuming an incorrect sitting position can lead to critical or fatal injuries.**
- **All occupants, including children, who are not properly belted can sustain critical or fatal injuries if the airbag is triggered. You should always transport all children up to 12 years of age on the rear seat. Never transport children in the vehicle if they are not restrained or the restraint system is not appropriate for their age, size or weight.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt or if you lean forward or to the side or assume an incorrect sitting position, the risk of injury is increased substantially. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, always wear the seat belt properly ⇒ page 19.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always properly adjust the front seats.** ■

The danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat

Rear-facing child seats must never be used on the front passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is enabled.

An enabled front airbag on the front passenger side is potentially a major danger to a child. The front passenger seat is life threatening to a child if you transport the child in a rear-facing child seat. You should always transport all children up to 12 years of age on the rear seat.

If a rear-facing child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, an inflating airbag can strike it with such great force that critical or fatal injuries may result.

Therefore we urgently recommend that you transport children on the rear seats. That is the safest place in the vehicle for children. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch ⇒ page 44. When transporting children, use a child seat appropriate to the age and size of each child ⇒ page 46.

For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to turn the airbag off, an Authorised Service Centre must be consulted.

WARNING

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **Never secure a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is enabled. The child can suffer critical or fatal injuries when the front passenger airbag is triggered.**

WARNING (continued)

- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the rear-facing child seat and hurl it with great force against the door, the roof or the backrest.**
- **If, under special circumstances, it should be necessary to transport a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, it is absolutely essential that you observe the following safety measures:**
  - **Disable the front passenger airbag ⇒ page 44, “Deactivating airbags*”.**
  - **The child seat must be approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front or side airbag.**
  - **Follow the installation instructions of the child seat manufacturer and absolutely observe the warnings ⇒ page 46, “Child safety”.**
  - **Before properly installing the child seat, push the front passenger seat all the way to the rear so that the greatest possible distance to the front passenger airbag is ensured.**
  - **Ensure that no objects prevent the front passenger seat from being pushed completely back.**
  - **The backrest of the front passenger seat must be in an upright position.** ■

Warning lamp for airbag and belt tension device system

This warning lamp monitors the airbag and belt tension device system.

The warning lamp monitors all airbags and belt tension devices in the vehicle, including control units and wiring connections. ▶

Monitoring of airbag and belt tension device system

The functionality of the airbag and belt tension device system is constantly monitored electronically. Each time the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp lights for several seconds and the display in the instrument panel* shows **AIRBAG / TENSIONER**.

The system must be checked when the warning lamp :

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
- does not go out about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- goes out and then comes on again after the ignition is switched on,
- or if it comes on or flickers while the car is moving.

In the event of a malfunction, the warning lamp remains on continuously. In addition, depending on the malfunction, a fault message appears in the display of the combi-instrument for approx. 10 seconds and a short acoustic signal is given. In this event, you should have a qualified workshop check the system immediately.

If any of the airbags are deactivated by the Authorised Service Centre, the indicator lights for several seconds more after the verification and will turn off if there is no fault.

WARNING

- **If there is a malfunction, the airbag and belt tension device system cannot properly perform its protective function.**
- **If a malfunction should occur, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise there is a risk that, in the event of an accident, the airbag system and belt tension devices may not be triggered, or may not be triggered correctly.** ■

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

The parts of the airbag system are installed in various places in your vehicle. If you work on the airbag system or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag are **scrapped**. The specialist workshops and the Vehicle disposal centres are familiar with these requirements.

WARNING

- **If repairs are not carried out by a professional, or if the airbags are used incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries is increased. The airbags may fail to inflate, or could inflate in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit on the passenger side of the dashboard, and do not obstruct or modify them in any way.**
- **It is important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **To clean the steering wheel or dash panel, you may use only a dry cloth or one moistened with water. Never clean the dash panel and surface of the airbag module with cleansers containing solvents. Solvents cause the surface to become porous. If the airbag inflates, disintegrating plastic parts can cause substantial injuries.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the airbag system.**
- **Any work on the airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the steering wheel) should be performed only by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, repair information and qualified personnel.**

WARNING (continued)

- **We urgently recommend that you go to a qualified workshop for all work on the airbag system.**
- **Never attempt to alter the front bumper or the body.**
- **The airbags provide protection for one accident only, if they have been deployed they must be replaced.** ■

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

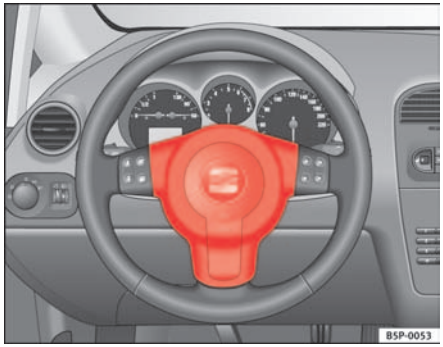

Fig. 18 Driver airbag located in steering wheel

Fig. 19 Front passenger airbag located in dash panel

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 18 and the airbag for the front passenger is located in the dash panel ⇒ fig. 19. Airbags are identified by the text “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision ⇒ page 37, “Safety notes on front airbag system”.

In addition to their normal function of restraining the occupants, the seat belts also hold the driver and front passenger in a position where the airbags can provide maximum protection in a frontal collision.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but is an integral part of the vehicle’s overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. For this reason, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times - not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ⇒ page 19, “Introduction”.

The main parts of the front airbag system are:

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit),
- the two front airbags (airbag with gas generator) for the driver and front passenger,
- a warning lamp in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 31.

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically. The airbag warning lamp will light up for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

There is a fault in the system if the warning lamp

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on ⇒ page 31,
- does not go out about 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- goes out and then comes on again after the ignition is switched on,
- or if it comes on or flickers while the car is moving.

The front airbag system will not be triggered if:

- if the ignition is switched off,
- during a minor frontal collision,
- during a minor side collision,
- during a rear-end collision,
- or if the vehicle rolls.

WARNING

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇒ page 10, “Proper sitting position for occupants”.**
- **If a fault should occur in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a frontal collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.** ■

Function of front airbags

Inflated airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury.

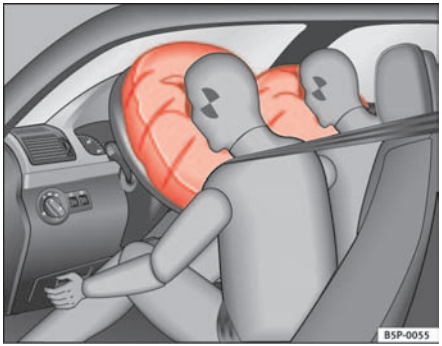

Fig. 20 Inflated front airbags

The airbag system is designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger are triggered in a severe frontal collision.

In certain types of accident the front, curtain and side airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbags fill with a propellant gas and deploy in front of the driver and front passenger ⇒ fig. 20. The fully deployed airbags cushion the forward movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. Once the impact has been absorbed, the airbag deflates sufficiently for the front occupants to see forward.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to deploy extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and is no indication that there was a fire in the vehicle. ■

The function of the airbag covers if the airbags are triggered

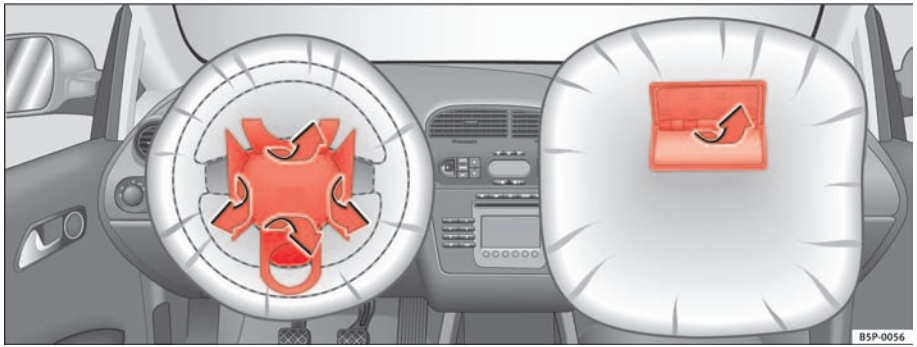

Fig. 21 Airbag covers reacting when the airbags are triggered

The airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel or dash panel when the driver and front passenger airbags deploy ⇒ fig. 21. The airbag covers remain connected to the steering wheel or the dash panel. ■

Safety notes on front airbag system

If you use airbags correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in many kinds of accident.

WARNING

- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. If the minimum distance is not observed then the airbags do not correctly protect the vehicle occupants; risk of fatal injuries! In addition, the front seats and head restraints must always be positioned correctly for the height of the occupant.**
- **If you are not wearing a seat belt or if you lean forward or to the side or assume an incorrect sitting position, the risk of injury is increased substantially. This increased risk of injury will be further increased if you are struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **Never let a child travel on the front seat without an appropriate restraint system. If the airbag is triggered in an accident, children can sustain serious or fatal injuries from the airbag as it inflates ⇒ page 46, "Child safety".**
- **Occupants sitting in the front of the vehicle must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.**
- **The airbags provide protection for one accident only, if they have been deployed they must be replaced.**
- **It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.** ■

Side airbags*

Description of side airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

Fig. 22 Side airbag in driver seat

The forward side airbags are located in the driver seat and front passenger seat backrests ⇒ fig. 22. The rear side airbags are located in the lining of the rear wheel housings The locations are identified by the text "AIRBAG" in the upper region of the backrests and the linings of the rear wheel housings.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the side airbag system gives the front seat occupants additional protection for the upper body in the event of a severe side collision ⇒ page 40, "Safety notes on the operation of the side airbag system".

In a side collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers on the front seats to the areas of the body facing the impact. In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, the seat belts also ▶

hold the passengers on the front seats and the outer rear seats in a position where the side airbags can provide maximum protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts. For this reason, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times - not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ⇒ page 19, "Introduction".

The side airbag system will not be triggered

- if the ignition is switched off,
- during a minor side collision,
- during a minor frontal collision,
- during a minor rear-end collision,
- or if the vehicle rolls.

The main parts of the airbag system are

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit),
- The forward side airbags in the backrests of the front seats and the rear side airbags in the lining of the rear wheel housings,
- a warning lamp in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 31.

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically. The airbag warning lamp will light up for approx. 4 seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

WARNING

- **In a side-on collision, the side airbags will not work, if the sensors do not correctly measure the pressure increase on the interior of the doors, due to air escaping through the areas with holes or openings in the door panel.**
- **Never drive the vehicle if the interior panels have been removed.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never drive if the interior door panels have been removed or if the panels have not been correctly fitted.**
- **Never drive the vehicle if the loudspeakers in the door panels have been removed, unless the holes left by the loudspeakers have been correctly closed.**
- **Always check that the openings are closed or covered if loudspeakers or other equipment are fitted in the interior door panels.**
- **Any work carried out to the doors should be made in a qualified authorised workshop.**
- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇒ page 10, "Proper sitting position for occupants".**
- **If a fault should occur in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a side collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.** ■

Function of side airbags

Inflated airbags can reduce the risk of head or chest injury in many side impact collisions.

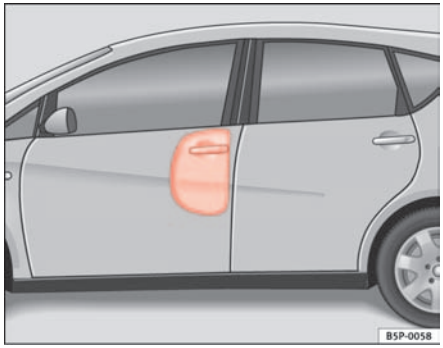

Fig. 23 Inflated side airbag on left side of vehicle

In some **side collisions** the side airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 23.

In certain types of accident the front, curtain and side airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to deploy extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and is no indication that there was a fire in the vehicle.

The fully deployed airbags cushion the movement of the occupants of the front seats and the outer rear seats and help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. ■

Safety notes on the operation of the side airbag system

If airbags are used correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in side impact collisions.

WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury should the side airbag system be triggered in an accident.
- In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.
- Occupants of the outer seats must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position. It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- Great forces, such as hard blows or kicks, must not be exerted upon the backrest bolster because the system may be damaged. In this case the side airbags would not be triggered.
- Under no circumstances should protective covers be fitted over the driver seat or front passenger seat unless the covers have been expressly approved for use in your vehicle. Because the airbag deploys from the side of the backrest, the use of non-approved seat covers would obstruct the side airbag seriously reducing the airbag's effectiveness ⇒ page 201, "Accessories, parts replacement and modifications".
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- The airbags provide protection for one accident only, if they have been deployed they must be replaced.

WARNING (continued)

- When children assume an incorrect sitting position, they expose themselves to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; this could have critical consequences including serious injury or death ⇒ page 46, "Child safety".
- Any work on the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the front seat) should only be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise, a fault may be introduced into the operation of the airbag system.
- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
- The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct functioning of the side and head airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged in any way, this may affect the correct working of the system. All work carried out on the front door must be made in a qualified workshop. ■

Curtain airbags

Description of curtain airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

Fig. 24 Location of left curtain airbag

The curtain airbags are located on both sides in the interior above the doors ⇒ fig. 24 and are identified with the text “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the curtain airbag system gives the occupants additional protection for the head and upper body in the event of a severe side collision ⇒ page 42, “Safety notes on the operation of the curtain airbag system”.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but is an integral part of the vehicle’s overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly. For this reason, it is most important to wear the seat belts at all times - not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ⇒ page 19, “Introduction”.

The main parts of the curtain airbag system are:

- an electronic control and monitoring system (control unit),
- the curtain airbags (airbags with gas generator) for the driver, front passenger and passengers on the rear seats,
- a warning lamp in the dash panel insert ⇒ page 31.

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored electronically.

The curtain airbag system will not be triggered

- if the ignition is switched off,

- during a frontal collision,
- during a rear-end collision,
- if the vehicle rolls,
- or during a minor frontal collision.

WARNING

If a fault should occur in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly. ■

Function of curtain airbags

Fully inflated airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury in a side collision.

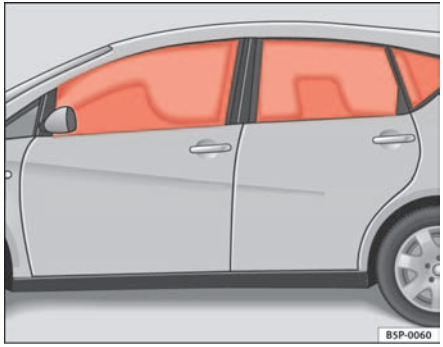

Fig. 25 Deployed curtain airbags

During some **side collisions** the curtain airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 25.

In certain types of accident the front, side and curtain airbags may be triggered together.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas. In the process, the curtain bag covers the side windows and door pillars.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to deploy extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and is no indication that there was a fire in the vehicle.

The fully deployed airbags cushion the movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper body.

The special design of the airbag allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are surrounded and protected by the airbag. ■

Safety notes on the operation of the curtain airbag system

If you use airbags correctly, they can considerably reduce the risk of injury in many kinds of accident.

WARNING

- **In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **For safety reasons, the head air bag must be disconnected in those vehicles fitted with a passenger compartment separation screen. See an Authorised Service Centre to make this adjustment.**

▶

⚠ **WARNING (continued)**

- There must be no other persons, animals or objects between the occupants of the outer seats and the deployment space of the curtain airbags so that the curtain airbag can deploy without restriction and provide the greatest possible protection. Therefore, sun blinds which have not been expressly approved for use in your vehicle may not be attached to the side windows ⇒ page 201, “Accessories, parts replacement and modifications”.
- The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. When using the coat hooks, do not hang the clothes on coat hangers.
- The airbags provide protection for one accident only, if they have been deployed they must be replaced.
- Any work on the curtain airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the roof lining) should only be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise, a fault may be introduced into the operation of the airbag system.
- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
- The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct functioning of the side and head airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged in any way, this may affect the correct working of the system. All work carried out on the front door must be made in a qualified workshop. ■

Deactivating airbags*

Disabling front passenger airbag

If you fit a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated.

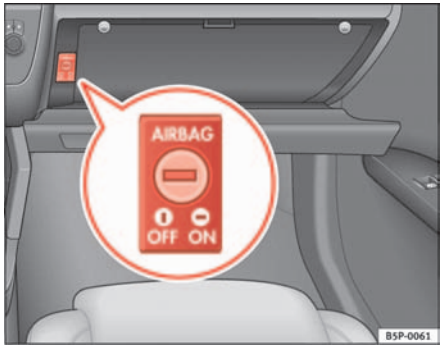

Fig. 26 In the glove box there is key switch for disabling and enabling the airbags on the front passenger side

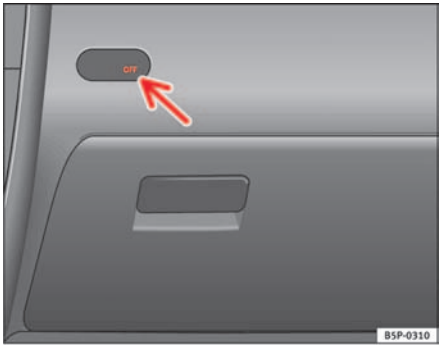

Fig. 27 Warning lamp for deactivated passenger airbag in centre console

When the passenger airbag is **deactivated**, this means that only the frontal airbag is deactivated. All the other airbags in the vehicle remain functional.

Disabling front passenger airbag

– Switch off ignition.

– Turn the ignition switch in the key operated switch in the glove box to the position **OFF** ⇒ fig. 26.

– Check that the warning lamp “AIRBAG OFF” in the dash panel ⇒ fig. 27 remains lit ⇒ ⚠ when the ignition is switched on.

Enabling front passenger airbag

– Switch off ignition.

– Turn the ignition switch in the key-operated switch in the glove box to the position **ON** ⇒ fig. 26.

– Check that the warning lamp in the panel ⇒ page 44, fig. 27 *does not* light up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is responsible for the proper position of the key-operated switch.**
- **You should deactivate the front passenger airbag only if you have to use a rear-facing child seat in exceptional cases. ⇒ page 46, "Child safety".**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards (or rear-facing) on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This represents a risk of fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary in exceptional circumstances to transport a child in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, you must always disable the front passenger airbag.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger seat, enable the front passenger airbag again.**
- **Only deactivate the passenger airbag when the ignition is off, otherwise a fault may occur in the airbag system, this will create a danger that in case of an accident, the airbag does not deploy properly or does not deploy at all.**
- **When the passenger airbag is deactivated, if the warning lamp is not continuously lit up when the front passenger airbag is disabled, there may be a fault in the airbag system:**
  - **Have the airbag system inspected immediately by a qualified workshop.**
  - **Do not use a child seat on the front passenger seat! The front passenger airbag could be triggered despite the fact that there is a fault in the system and, as a result, a child could sustain serious or fatal injuries.**
  - **It is not certain whether the front passenger airbag will deploy during an accident! Inform your passengers of this.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **When using the ignition key to activate / deactivate the passenger front airbag, only the passenger front airbag will be activated / deactivated. The side airbag and head airbag on the passenger side will remain active.** ■

Child safety

Brief introduction

Introduction

Statistics show that children are generally safer on the rear seat than on the front passenger seat.

We recommend that children under 12 years of age be transported on the rear seats. Children travelling on the rear seat must use a child restraint system or the seat belts provided, depending on their age, height and weight. For safety reasons, the child restraint system should be installed in the centre of the rear seat or behind the front passenger's seat.

The physical principles involved and the forces acting in a collision apply to children just as much as adults ⇒ page 21, "Why wear seat belts?". But unlike adults, children do not have fully developed muscle and bone structures. This means that children are subject to a greater risk of injury.

To reduce this risk, children must always use special child restraint systems when travelling in the vehicle.

We recommend the use of child safety products from the SEAT Genuine Accessories Program including systems for all ages made by "Peke"[2].

These systems have been especially designed and approved, complying with the ECE-R44. regulation.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats. Always read and observe ⇒ page 47, "Safety notes on using child seats".

We recommend that you include the manufacturer's directions for child seat use in the vehicle wallet and always keep them in the vehicle. ■

[2] Not for all countries

Safety notes on using child seats

Proper use of child seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for any children you transport in your vehicle.

– Protect your children by properly using appropriate child seats ⇒ page 48.

– Always ensure that the belt webbing is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child seat.

– When travelling, do not allow children to distract you from traffic.

– Take breaks regularly during long trips. Take a break at least every two hours.

WARNING

- **Never install a child seat facing backwards (or rear-facing) on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This represents a risk of fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary, in exceptional cases, to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag must always be disabled ⇒ page 44, "Deactivating airbags*". If the passenger seat has a height adjustment option, move it to the highest position.**
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to turn the airbag off, an Authorised Service Centre must be consulted.**
- **All passengers, especially children, must assume the proper sitting position and be properly belted in while travelling.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Never hold children or babies on your lap, this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be flung through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and other occupants.**
- **If children assume an improper sitting position when the car is moving, they expose themselves to greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; this could have consequences including serious injury or death.**
- **A suitable child seat can protect your child!**
- **Never leave a child unsupervised in a child seat or alone in the vehicle.**
- **Depending on weather conditions, it may become extremely hot or cold inside the vehicle. This can be fatal.**
- **Children who are less than 1.5 metres tall must not wear a normal seat belt without a child restraint system, as this could cause injuries to the abdominal and neck areas during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident.**
- **Do not allow the belt webbing to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.**
- **Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause injuries even in a minor collision or sudden braking manoeuvres.**
- **The seat belt provides maximum protection only when the belt web is properly positioned ⇒ page 24, "Seat belts".**
- **Only one child may occupy a child seat ⇒ page 48, "Child seats".** ■

Child seats

Categorisation of child seats into groups

Use only child seats that are officially approved and suitable for the child.

Child seats are covered by the European standard ECE R 44 (issued by the Economic Commission of Europe).

The child seats are grouped into 5 categories:

Group 0: to 10 kg

Group 0+: to 13 kg

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg

Group 2: from 15 to 25 kg

Group 3: from 22 to 36 kg

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R 44 standard bear the test mark on the seat (the letter E in a circle with the test number below it). ■

Group 0 and 0+ child seats

A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help to protect your child.

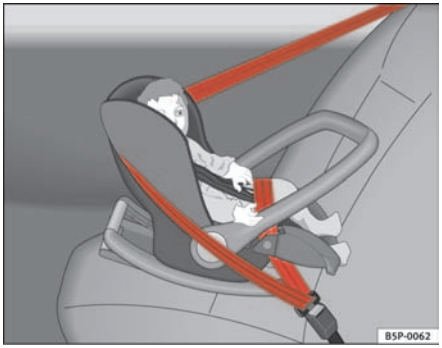

Fig. 28 A group 0 rear-facing child seat fitted on the rear seat.

Group 0: For babies from about 9 months old and 10 kg in weight the most suitable seats are those appearing in the illustration ⇒ fig. 28.

Group 0+: For babies from about 18 months old and 13 kg in weight the most suitable seats are those appearing in the illustration.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend that you include the manufacturer's directions for child seat use in the vehicle wallet and always keep them in the vehicle.

WARNING

Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety notes on using child seats" on page 47. ■

Group 1 child seats

A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help to protect your child.

Fig. 29 A category 1 forward-facing child seat fitted on the rear seat.

Child seats using the "ISOFIX" and "Toptether" system (or even the antirotation system) or seats in which the child faces the rear of the car are most appropriate for babies and small children weighing between 9 and 18 kg.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend that you include the manufacturer's directions for child seat use in the vehicle wallet and always keep them in the vehicle.

WARNING

Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety notes on using child seats" on page 47. ■

Group 2 and 3 child seats

A suitable child seat and a correctly adjusted seat belt can help to protect your child.

Fig. 30 Forward-facing child seat installed on rear seat.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend that you include the manufacturer's directions for child seat use in the vehicle wallet and always keep them in the vehicle.

Group 2 child seats

Children *under* 7 years of age weighing between 15 and 25 kg are best protected by group 2 child seats in conjunction with properly adjusted seat belts.

Group 3 child seats

Children *over* 7 years of age weighing between 22 and 36 kg but less than 1.5 metres tall are best protected by seat cushions with head restraints in conjunction with properly worn seat belts ⇒ fig. 30.

WARNING

- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie approximately on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck or the arm. The seat belt must lie close to the torso. The lap belt part must lie across the pelvis, not across**

WARNING (continued)

the stomach, and always fit closely. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack ⇒ page 24, "Seat belts".

- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety notes on using child seats" on page 47.** ■

Securing child seats

Ways to secure a child seat

A child seat can be secured differently on the rear seat and on the front passenger seat.

You can secure a child seat to the rear seat or front passenger seat in the following ways:

- Child seats in groups **0 to 3** can be secured with a seat belt.
- Child seats from the groups **0, 0+ and 1** using the "ISOFIX" and "Toptether" systems or the antirotation system may be secured without using the adult seatbelt and using the "ISOFIX" and "Toptether" anchors or the anti-rotation mechanism/brackets.

Weight class	Weight	Seat locations		
		Front passenger	Rear outer	Rear centre
Group 0	‹10 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 0+	‹13 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 1	9-18 kg	U*	U/L	U
Group 2 / 3	15-36 kg	U*	U	U

U: Suitable for universal approved restraining systems for use in this age category (universal retention systems are those fitted using the adult seat belt.

*: Move the passenger seat as far to rear as possible, as high as possible and always deactivate the airbag.

L: Suitable for retention systems using the "ISOFIX" and "Toptether" anchors or antirotation mechanism/bracket

▶

WARNING

- **When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a restraint system suitable for age, weight and size.**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards (or rear-facing) on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This represents a risk of fatal injuries to the child! However, if a child must, under exceptional circumstances, travel in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be deactivated ⇒ page 44, "Deactivating airbags*" and the seat put into the highest position where possible.**
- **Read and always observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety notes on using child seats" on page 47.** ■

Securing the child seat using the "ISOFIX" and Toptether system or the antirotation mechanism/system

The child seat with "ISOFIX" system can be secured quickly, easily and safely on the rear outer seats using the system

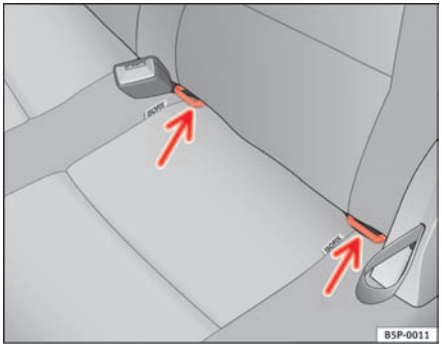

Fig. 31 ISOFIX securing rings

When removing or fitting the child seat, please be sure to follow the manufacturer's instructions.

– Move the seat as far to rear as it will go.

– Press the child seat onto the "ISOFIX" retaining rings until the child seat can be heard to engage securely. If the child seat is fitted with "Toptether" anchoring, connect it to the corresponding ring. If the child seat is fitted with any other antirotation system, follow the manufacturer's instructions carefully.

– Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is secure. ▶

Two “ISOFIX” retaining rings are fitted on each outer rear seat. In some vehicles, the rings are secured to the seat frame and in others they are secured to the rear floor. The “ISOFIX” rings can be accessed between the seat back and the seat cushion. The “Toptether” rings are located in the rear space in the back. They are often located on the rear of the seat backs.

Child seats with “ISOFIX” and “Toptether” mountings are available from the Authorised Service Centres.

WARNING

- **The retaining rings are designed only for use with “ISOFIX” and “Toptether” systems.**
- **Never secure child seats that do not have the “ISOFIX” or Toptether system, retaining belts or objects to the fastening rings – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Ensure that the child seat is secured correctly using the “ISOFIX” and Toptether anchors.** ■

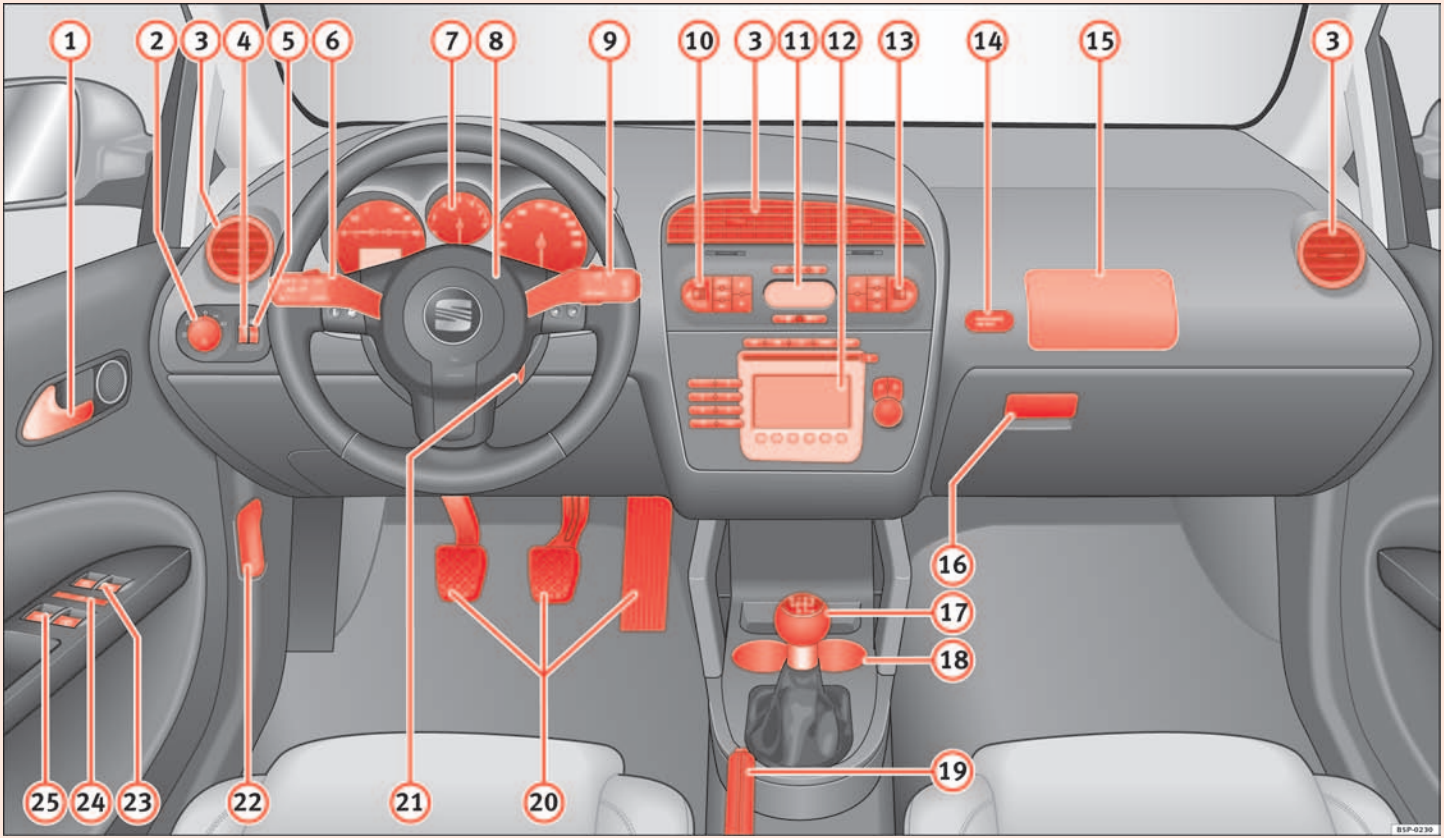

Fig. 32 Instrument panel

Operating instructions

Cockpit

Overview

Overview of the instrument panel

This overview will help you to familiarise yourself with the controls and displays.

1 Door release lever
2 Light switch 111
3 Air vent
4 Lighting control for instrument and control lighting 113
5 Headlight range control 113
6 Turn signal and main beam lever and cruise control system* . 115,174
7 Instrument panel:
– Instruments 56
– Display 59
– Indication lamps 72
8 Horn (works only when the ignition is on)/ and driver front airbag 30
9 Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever and operation of the multi-function display* 120, 61
10 Thumb wheel for left seat heating 131
11 Controls for
– Heating* and ventilation 149
– Air conditioning* 151
– Air conditioner* 154
12 Radio
13 Thumb wheel for right seat heating 131
14 Indication lamp for deactivated front passenger airbag 44
15 Front passenger airbag 30
16 Glove compartment lever 133
17 Gear shift lever 166
18 Cup holder compartment 138
19 Handbrake
20 Pedals
21 Ignition lock 161
22 Handle for releasing the bonnet 208
23 Button for opening and closing the front windows 106
24 Safety switch* for the rear windows 106
25 Control* for opening and closing the rear windows 106

Note

Some of the items of equipment listed here are fitted only on certain models/model years or are optional extras. ■

Instruments

Instrument overview

The instruments display the vehicle operating status.

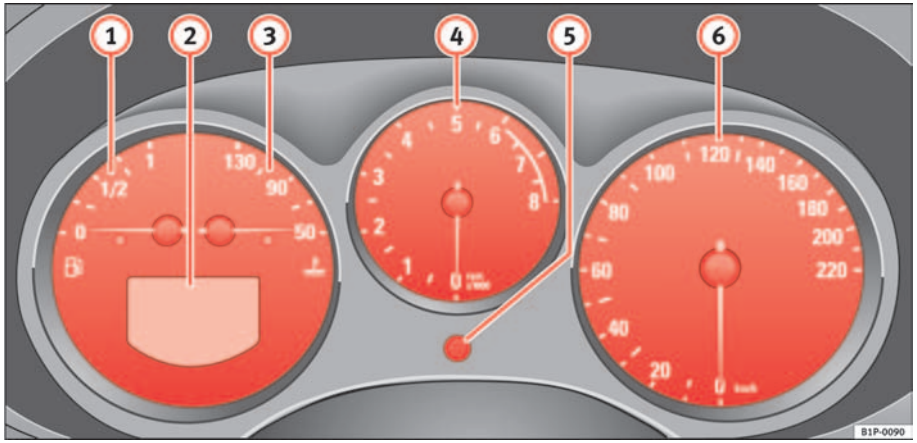

Fig. 33 Detail of the dash panel: Instruments

Detail of the dash panel: Instruments

1. Fuel gauge ⇒ page 57
2. Multi-function display
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge ⇒ page 57
4. Rev counter ⇒ page 58
5. Time adjustment button / trip recorder reset button ⇒ page 58
6. Speedometer ■

Fuel gauge and reserve indicator

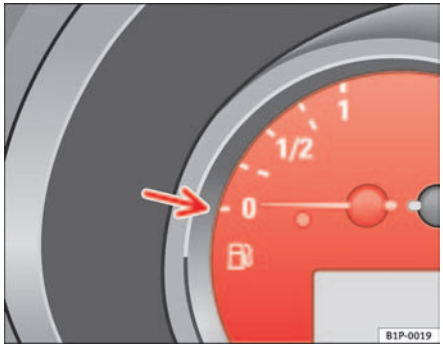

Fig. 34 Details of the instrument panel: Fuel gauge

Details of the instrument panel: Fuel gauge

The fuel tank has a capacity of approx. 55 litres.

When the needle reaches the reserve zone ⇒ fig. 34 (arrow), the warning lamp will light and an acoustic signal will sound **reminding the driver to refuel**. At this point there are still about 7 litres of fuel in the tank.

The following text appears in the instrument panel display[3] **PLEASE REFUEL*** ■

Engine coolant temperature display

This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.

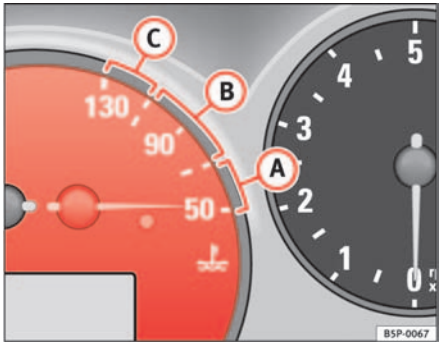

Fig. 35 Details of the instrument panel: Engine coolant temperature gauge

Needle in cold zone (A)

Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads ⇒ fig. 35.

Needle in normal zone (B)

In normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle section of the scale. The temperature may also rise when the engine is working hard, especially at high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern as long as the warning lamp does not light up and no warning* text appears in the combi-instrument display.

Needle in warning zone (C)

The warning lamp* ⇒ page 72, fig. 47 (2) will light up if the needle is in the warning zone. The following warning appears in the instrument panel display ▶

[3] Depending on the model version

[4] . **Stop the car and switch off the engine.** Check the coolant level ⇒ page 215 ⇒ ⚠ .

Even if the coolant level is correct **do not continue driving**. You should obtain technical assistance.

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, always bear in mind the safety warnings. ⇒ page 208

Caution

Accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating. ■

Rev counter

The rev. counter displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

The start of the red zone on the dial ⇒ page 56, fig. 33 (4) indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or move the selector lever to D (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

Caution

The rev counter needle must never enter the red zone on the scale. Risk of engine damage.

[4] Depending on the model version

For the sake of the environment

Changing up a gear early will help you to save fuel and minimise engine noise. ■

Setting the digital clock*

The digital clock is located in the instrument panel display.

– Turn the setting knob ⇒ page 56, fig. 33 (5) anti-clockwise to the stop to set the hour. If the knob is turned briefly anti-clockwise the clock will advance one hour further.

– Turn the setting knob clockwise to the limit stop to set the minutes. If the knob is turned briefly clockwise the clock will advance one minute further. ■

Digital display in the instrument panel

Display (without warning or information texts)

The display in the instrument panel shows, amongst other things, the mileage and trip recorder as well as the selector lever position.

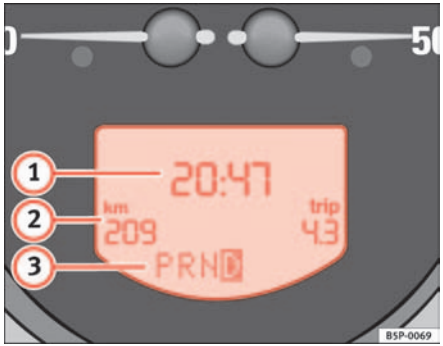

Fig. 36 Detail of the instrument panel: Screen with various displays

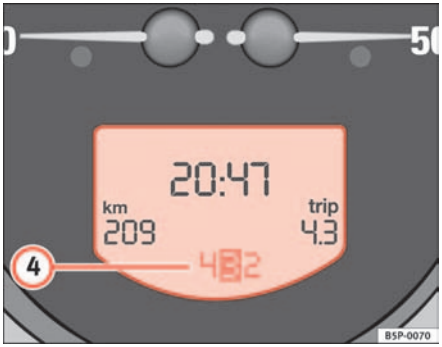

Fig. 37 Detail of instrument panel: Display with Tiptronic gear selection

1. Digital clock display ⇒ page 58
2. Distance display or service interval display ⇒ page 60
3. Selector lever position display for the automatic gearbox*.
4. Display for the gears in Tiptronic mode (automatic gearbox)*. The selected gear appears in the display field with a light background ⇒ fig. 37 5 ■

Displayed categories

The display in the instrument panel shows the mileage and trip recorder as well as the selector lever position.

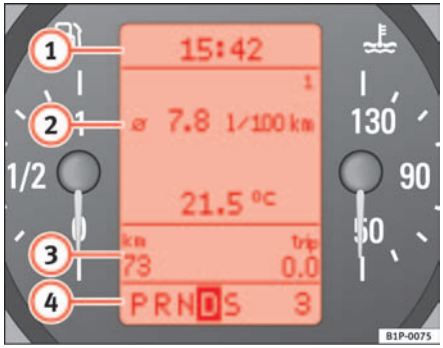

Fig. 38 Digital display in the instrument panel

(1) Control and warning lamps: “Control and warning lamps”

(1) Clock: “Setting the time”. In some vehicles the ambient temperature is displayed to the right of the clock.

(2) There are optional and automatic displays in this field.

- **Selectable displays:** e.g. Multi-function display (MFD) and ambient temperature display
- **Automatic indications:** information or warning messages: “Information or warning messages on the screen”
- Menus with diverse information are shown on the screen allowing many adjustments to be made: “Instrument panel menus”

(3) Mileage display or Service Interval Display “Mileage display or Service Interval Display”

(4) Selector lever position display for the automatic gearbox. The actual position of the selector lever or the gear which is engaged (for Tiptronic) are highlighted. ■

Mileage display or Service Interval Display

Distance display

The left-hand counter in the display registers the total amount of distance covered by the vehicle.

The right-hand counter registers the short journeys. The last digit indicates steps of 100 metres. The trip recorder counter may be reset by the reset button ⇒ page 56, fig. 33 (5).

Service interval display

A **Service pre-warning** will appear in the mileage display if a service is due soon. A “spanner” symbol appears and the display “km” with the distance that can be driven until the next service appointment is due. The display will change after approximately 10 seconds. A “clock symbol” appears and the number of days until the service appointment should be carried out. The instrument panel displays the following message [5] : **SERV. IN ... KM OR ... DAYS**. The service message will disappear approximately 20 seconds after the ignition is switched on or the engine is running. The normal display can be resumed by pressing the reset button on the trip counter or by pressing the rocker switch of the MFI ⇒ page 61, fig. 39 (B).

With the ignition switched on, you can call up the current **service message** by pressing the trip counter reset knob for 2 seconds. ▶

[5] Depending on the model version

An **overdue service** is indicated by a minus sign in front of the mileage or day information. ■

Display with multi-function display (MFD)*

The multi-function display (MFD) shows you diverse journey and consumption data.

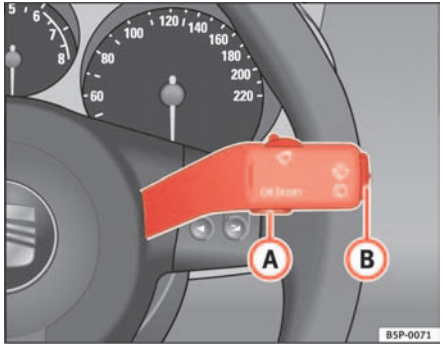

Fig. 39 Windscreen wiper and washer lever: Button A and rocker switch B

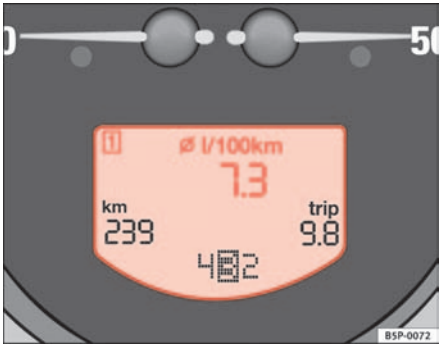

Fig. 40 Digital screen on the instrument panel: Average fuel consumption display

The multi-function display is equipped with two automatic memories: **1 - Trip memory** and **2 - Total journey memory**. The selected memory will be shown in the upper right-hand corner of the display.

Selecting memory

– With the ignition switched on, briefly press the button ⇒ fig. 39 (A) on the windscreen wiper lever to move between the two memories.

Resetting the memory

– Select the memory that you would like to reset.

– Press and hold button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever for at least 2 seconds.

The **trip memory 1** collects the travel and consumption data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is continued within two hours of switching off the ignition, the new values will be added to ▶

the existing trip recorder memory. The memory will automatically be deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than two hours.

The **total journey memory 2** collects the journey data for any number of individual journeys (even if the ignition is switched off for longer than two hours) up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes travel time, 9999 miles distance travelled and 999 litres of fuel consumed. The memory will automatically be deleted if one of the named values is reached. ■

Displays in the multi-function display (MFD)*

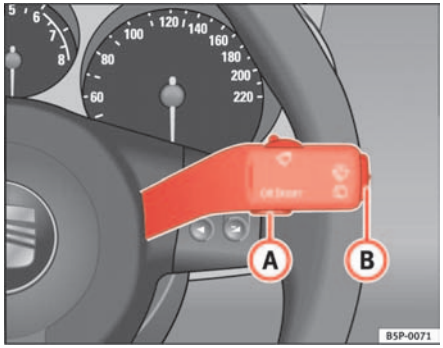

Fig. 41 Windscreen wiper and washer lever: Button A and rocker switch B

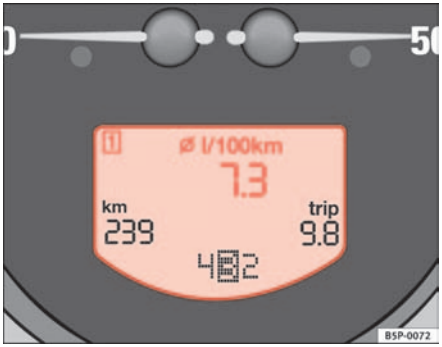

Fig. 42 Digital screen on the instrument panel: Average fuel consumption display

You can switch between the following displays in the multi-function display (MFD) by operating the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 41 (B) on the windscreen wiper lever.

Memory displays

- Journey duration
- Speed warning
- Average speed
- Distance
- Distance to empty (the distance you can travel with the remaining fuel)
- Average fuel consumption
- Current fuel consumption

min - Journey duration

The display shows the amount of time that has elapsed since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The memory will automatically be deleted once this value has been reached. ▶

Set speed indicator

When driving at the required speed, enter the speed indicator mode and press the button (A) (Reset), the display remembers the indicated speed. If the indicated speed is exceeded, a warning text is displayed on the screen [6] and a warning signal sounds.

This may be deactivated by pressing the button (A) (Reset).

The speed may be altered using the rocker switch (B) in steps of 5 km/h within 5 seconds of the initial memory value.

Ø mph - Average speed

The average speed will be shown after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds whilst the vehicle is in motion.

Miles - Distance travelled

The display shows the distance travelled since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 9999 miles. The memory will automatically be deleted once this value has been reached.

Miles - Fuel range

The fuel range is calculated using the figures for tank content and current fuel consumption. It shows how far the vehicle can travel using the same conditions as a reference.

Ø litre/100km - Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption will be shown ⇒ page 62, fig. 42 after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds whilst the vehicle is in motion. The amount of fuel used will not be shown.

[6] Depending on the model version, the message on the screen may vary and may be represented by flashing of the speed indication or by a speed message.

litres/100km or litres/hr - Current fuel consumption

The display will show the current fuel consumption in litre/km whilst the vehicle is in motion or in litre/hour when the vehicle is in a stationary position with the engine running.

Using this display you can see how your driving style affects fuel consumption ⇒ page 190.

Ambient temperature display

The measurement margin extends from -45°C to +58°C. At temperatures lower than +4°C, an “ice crystal symbol” is displayed and a “warning” sounds if the vehicle is moving at more than 20 km/h (ice warning). This symbol will flash for about 10 seconds and remains lit until the exterior temperature rises above +4°C or 6°C if it was already lit.

WARNING

There could be black ice on the road surface even if the “snowflake symbol” is not shown. You should, for this reason, not rely exclusively on this display - Risk of accident!

Note

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual ambient temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine. ■

Warning or information text in the display

Faults are shown in the display with warning lamps and warning/information reports.

The system runs a check on certain components and functions when the ignition is switched on and while the vehicle is moving. Functional faults are indi- ▶

cated by symbols with warnings and information texts in the display. An audible warning is given in certain cases.

Warning symbols

There are red warning symbols (priority 1) and yellow warning symbols (priority 2)

Information text

In addition to warning messages given on a fault, you will receive information in the display on procedures or will be asked to carry out certain tasks.

Note

In the case of screens without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by the warning lamps. ■

Warning reports, Priority 1 (red)

If one of these faults occurs, the warning lamp will flash or light up and will be accompanied by **three audible warnings**. This is a **danger** warning. Stop the car and switch off the engine. Check the fault and correct it. Obtain professional assistance if necessary.

If several priority 1 faults are detected at the same time, the symbols will be displayed one after the other for about 2 seconds at a time and will continue until the fault is corrected.

No menus will be shown in the display for the duration of a priority 1 warning report.

Examples of priority 1 warning reports (red) [7]

- Brake system symbol with warning text **STOP BRAKE FLUID INSTRUCTION MANUAL** or **STOP BRAKE FAULT INSTRUCTION MANUAL**
- Coolant symbol with the warning text **STOP CHECK COOLANT INSTRUCTION MANUAL**
- Engine oil pressure symbol with the warning text **STOP ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW! SERVICE MANUAL** ■

Warning reports, Priority 2 (yellow)

If one of these faults occurs, the warning lamp lights up, and is accompanied by **one audible warning**. The function should be checked as soon as possible.

If several priority 2 warning reports are detected at the same time, the symbols are displayed one after the other for about 2 seconds at a time. After a set time, the information text will disappear and the symbol will be shown as a reminder at the side of the display.

Priority 2 warning reports will not be shown until all **Priority 1** warning reports have been dealt with!

Examples of priority 2 warning reports (yellow):[8]

- Fuel symbol with the information text **PLEASE REFUEL**
- Windscreen washer fluid symbol with the information text **REFILL WINDSCREEN WASHER FLUID**. Refill the windscreen washer tank ⇒ page 218
- Electronic immobiliser symbol with the information text **SAFE**. A valid key was not used, for this reason the vehicle may not start ■

[7] Depending on the model version
[8] Depending on the model version

Instrument panel menus

Main menu

The menu enables access to the different display functions.

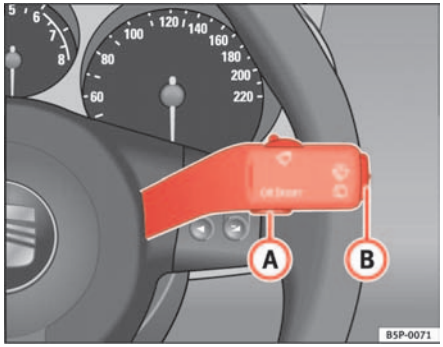

Fig. 43 Windscreen wiper lever: button A to confirm the menu point and rocker switch B to change the menu

Fig. 44 Digital display on the instrument panel: Main menu

Open main menu

– Switch on the ignition.

– Press and hold the eject button (B) for at least 2 seconds. It may be necessary to repeat this operation until the main menu is displayed.

Select a menu from the main menu

– To choose an option from the menu, press the upper or lower end of the rocker switch. The selected option is displayed between two horizontal lines.

– Press button (A) to select the entry.

Example of menu use: “Example of menu use”

Main menu	Function
Multi-function display	Change to multi-function display (MFD): “Multi-function display (MFD)”
Audio	The current station will be shown when the radio is switched on.
Navigation	This menu is only available if the vehicle is fitted with a navigation system. The navigation system must be switched on. When the destination guide is activated, the turning arrows and proximity bars are displayed. The display is similar to that of the Navigation system. If the destination guide is not activated, the direction of travel (compass) and the name of the street along which you are driving are shown.
Telephone	This menu is only available if the vehicle is fitted with a telephone mounted by the manufacturer: “Fixed telephone installation”
Vehicle condition	This menu displays the actual warning or information texts: “Menu Vehicle condition” This option flashes when any of these texts are displayed.
Configuration	This option allows the time, the speed warning when using winter tyres, units, language, independent heating, the Light and visibility menu and the Convenience menu to be reset.
Display off	The display is switched off. It comes on again on entering the main menu or when a warning, breakdown or service message appears. The main menu will be shown in the display for approximately 5 seconds after the ignition is switched on. The display will then switch off again.

Note

For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ■

Example of menu use

All the menus on the instrument panel may be used according to the following procedure.

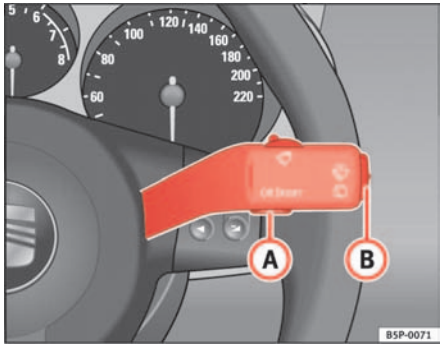

Fig. 45 Windscreen wiper lever: button A to confirm the menu point and rocker switch B to change the menu

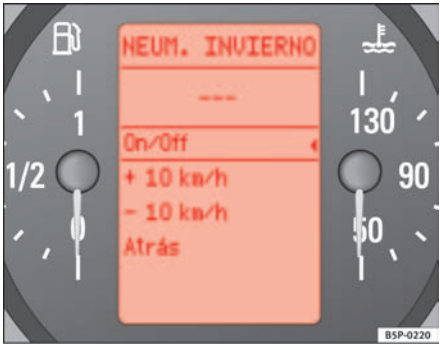

Fig. 46 Digital screen on the instrument panel: winter tyre display

The setting of a speed warning will be used as an example of how to use the menus. This is a good idea if you are, for example, using winter tyres which are not suited for the top speed of the vehicle.

1. Open the main menu

– Switch on the ignition.

– Hold down button (B) for two seconds to return to main menu from other menu. It may be necessary to repeat this operation until the main menu is displayed.

2. Open the main menu "Configuration"

– To choose an option from the menu, press the upper or lower end of the rocker switch. The selected option is displayed between two lines and there will also be a triangle on the right.

– Select menu **Configuration**.

– Press button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever. The **Configuration** menu is opened.

3. Open the main menu "Winter tyres"

– Select option **Winter tyres** using the rocker switch.

– Press button (A). The menu **Winter tyres** is opened.

4. Program a speed limit warning

– Use the rocker switch to select the menu entry **+ 10 km/h** or **-10 km/h** and press the button to either increase or decrease the set speed.

5. To activate and deactivate the speed limit warning

– Use the rocker switch to select the menu point **On/ Off** and press the button to switch the speed warning either on or off. If the speed warning is deactivated, three dashes will be displayed **---**

6. To close the menu “Winter tyres”

– In the menu select **Back**.

The function “Winter tyres” sends an optical and an acoustic signal when the vehicle reaches the set speed.

Example menu “Winter tyres”

On the display Winter tyres	Function Name of menu displayed
X km/h **or ---**	The current set speed is displayed or dashes will be shown if the function is deactivated.
On / Off	If the function is activated or deactivated
+10 km/h	The set value increases by 10 km/h
-10 km/h	The set value decreases by 10 km/h
Back	The menu “Winter tyres” is closed and the last displayed menu is shown.

Note

For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ■

Vehicle status menu

This menu shows warning or information texts

Open Vehicle Condition menu

– Choose option **Vehicle condition** from main menu: “Main menu” and press the button on the windscreen wiper lever.

Priority 2 warning messages and information texts: “Warning and information texts on the screen” automatically disappear after a certain time and are saved in the menu “Vehicle condition”.

The warning and information texts may be viewed in this menu. If there are no messages, **ok** appears on the display. If there are several messages, each one is shown for four seconds. ■

Configuration menu

This menu is used to make the settings for the vehicle functions.

Open Configuration menu

– Choose the Configuration option from main menu “Main menu” and press the button on the windscreen wiper lever.

Example of use of menus: “Example of use of menus”.

Configuration	Function
Time	The hours and minutes of the clock and the navigation system can be changed. Both 12- and 24-hour formats are available and the time may be changed to summer time (an **S** appears in the upper part of the screen)
Winter tyres	The menu allows the setting of a speed at which an optical and acoustic warning will be given by the system. You can use this function, for example, if you have fitted winter tyres which are not suited for the top speed of your vehicle . See chapter “Wheels” in owner’s manual
Settings: Language	The display texts and the navigation system texts can be seen in seven different languages
Units	This option allows you to select the units for displaying temperature, fuel consumption values and distances.
Convenience	From this menu it is possible to alter the vehicle convenience settings.

Lights & visibility	From this menu it is possible to alter the vehicle lighting settings: “Lights and visibility menu”
Display off	Only emergency messages appear
Back	This returns to the main menu

Note

For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ■

Convenience Menu

From this menu it is possible to alter the vehicle convenience settings.

Open the convenience menu

– Choose the option **Configuration** from main menu and press the button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever.

– Choose the option **Configuration** from main menu and press the button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever.

Example of menu use: “Example of menu use”

Convenience	Function
Open doors	Selective opening/Complete opening Self locking Self unlocking
Audible warning function	On / off (audible warning of central locking)
Convenience opening	Deactivate All 1 door
Synchronized adjustment of the wing mirrors	synchronized/ individual
Back	This returns to the Configuration menu

Note

For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ■

Lights and visibility menu

From this menu it is possible to alter the vehicle lighting settings.

Open Lights and visibility Menu

– Choose the option **Configuration** from main menu: “Main menu” and press the button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever.

– Select the option **Lights & visibility** from the menu and press button (A) on the windscreen wiper lever.

Example of menu use: “Example of menu use”

Lights & visibility	Function
Coming Home/ Leaving Home	The lighting duration may be modified, in steps of 10 seconds, from a minimum of 10 seconds to a maximum of 90 seconds The function may also be deactivated.
Indicator conf.	With the convenience mode activated, the indicator will blink at least three times when turned on.
Manufacturer’s settings	The manufacturer’s predefined values for the functions of this menu are restored.
Back	This returns to the Configuration menu

Note

For electronic and vehicle equipment one or more of these menus will be displayed. ■

Warning lamps

Overview of the warning lamps

The warning lamps indicate a number of different functions and possible faults.

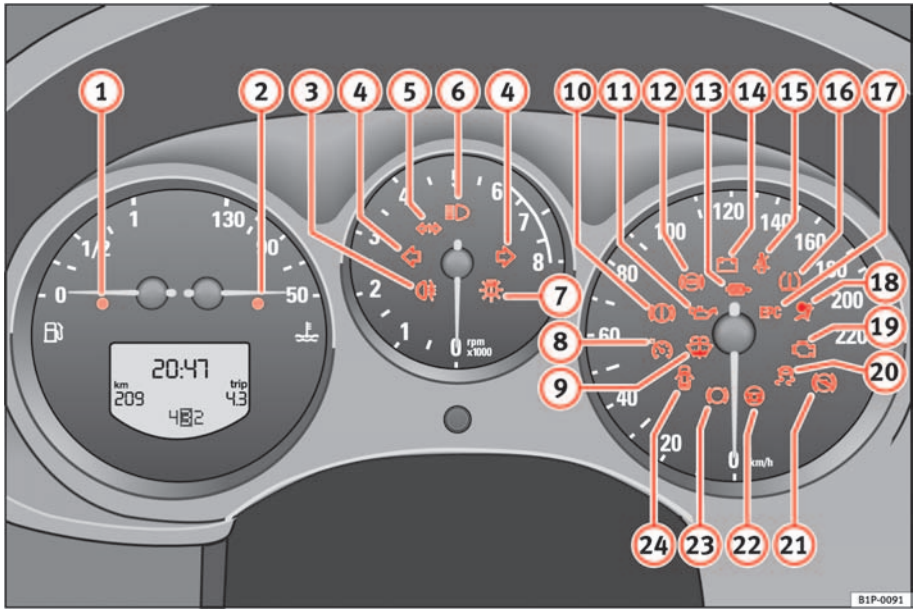

Fig. 47 Instrument panel with warning lamps. Some of the items of equipment listed here are fitted only on certain models/model years or are optional extras.

Item	Symbol	Meaning of warning and control lamps	Further information
1		Fuel level / reserve	⇒ page 75
2		Coolant level / coolant temperature	⇒ page 75
3		Rear fog light switched on	⇒ page 76
4		Turn signals in operation	⇒ page 76
5		Trailer turn signals in operation	⇒ page 76
6		Main beam switched on	⇒ page 76
7		Bulb defective	⇒ page 76
8		Cruise control system switched on	⇒ page 77
9		Washer fluid level	⇒ page 77
10		Parking brake applied or low brake fluid level or fault in brake system	⇒ page 77
11		Engine oil pressure	⇒ page 78
12	ABS	ABS system fault	⇒ page 78
13		Pollen accumulation in the diesel engine particulate filter	⇒ page 79
14		Alternator fault	⇒ page 79

Item	Symbol	Meaning of warning and control lamps	Further information
15		Fasten seat belts!	⇒ page 19
16		Tyre pressure	⇒ page 80
17	EPC	Engine fault (petrol engine)	⇒ page 81
17		Glow plug system (diesel engine) **Lit up:** Glow plug system switched on **Flashing:** engine fault.	⇒ page 81
18		Airbag or belt tension device system fault or airbag disabled	⇒ page 28 ⇒ page 31
19		Fault in the emission control system	⇒ page 81
20		**Flashing:** electronic stabilisation programme (ESP) in operation, **Lit up:** ESP fault or switched off	⇒ page 81
21		Operate foot brake	⇒ page 82
22		Electromechanical steering	⇒ page 82
23		Brake pad wear indicator	⇒ page 82
24		Door open indicator	⇒ page 82
	SAFE	Electronic immobiliser	⇒ page 83

WARNING

- **Failure to observe warning lamps and warning messages can result in serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle.**

WARNING (continued)

- **The risk of an accident increases if your vehicle breaks down. Use a warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your stationary vehicle so that it does not represent a danger.**

WARNING (continued)

- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area! Before you open the bonnet to work on the engine or in the engine compartment, you must switch off the engine and allow it to cool to reduce the risk of scalding or other injuries. Read and observe the relevant warnings ⇒ page 208.**

Note

- The appropriate warning lamp for a fault will light up in vehicles without warning or information texts in the display.
- In vehicles with warning or information texts in the display, the appropriate warning lamp for a fault will light up and a warning or information text will also appear in the display. ■

Fuel level / reserve

This symbol lights up to indicate that the fuel tank is down to the reserve level.

This lights when only 7 litres of fuel remain in the tank. Also, an **audible warning** is given. This serves as a reminder to fill up with fuel at the earliest opportunity ⇒ page 205.

The message displayed in the instrument panel display is[9]: **PLEASE REFUEL**. ■

[9] Depending on the model version

Coolant Level* / temperature

The warning lamp lights up if the coolant temperature is too high or if the coolant level is too low.

There is a fault if:

- The warning symbol does not go out again after a few seconds.
- The warning lamp lights up or flashes while the vehicle is moving, while **three acoustic warning signals** ⇒ ⚠ are emitted.

This means that either the coolant level is too low or the coolant temperature is too high.

Coolant temperature too high

The following text is displayed in the instrument panel display [10]: **CHECK COOLANT! INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL**.

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. The coolant temperature is too high if the needle is over the warning area on the dial. **Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and wait for it to cool down.** Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is correct, the overheating may be caused by a malfunction of the radiator fan. Check the radiator fan fuse and have it replaced if necessary ⇒ page 242.

If the warning lamp lights up again after driving on for a short distance, **stop the vehicle and switch off the engine**. Contact an Authorised Service Centre or a qualified workshop.

Coolant level too low

The following text is displayed in the instrument panel display [11]: **STOP CHECK COOLANT! INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL** ⇒ page 215. ▶

[10] Depending on the model version
[11] Depending on the model version

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. If the needle is in the normal range, top up with coolant at the earliest opportunity ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **If your vehicle is immobilised for any technical reasons, move it to a safe distance from traffic. Turn off the engine, turn on the hazard lights and place the warning triangle.**
- **Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Risk of scalding. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.**
- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area! Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down. Always note the corresponding warnings ⇒ page 208.** ■

Rear fog light

This warning lamp lights up when the rear fog light is switched on. Further information ⇒ page 111. ■

Turn signals

The warning lamp flashes when the turn signals are in operation.

Depending on which turn signal is operated, either the left ⇦ or right ⇨ indicator lamp flashes. Both warning lamps will flash at the same time when the hazard warning lights are switched on.

If one turn signal fails, the warning lamp will start flashing twice as fast.

Further information on the turn signals ⇒ page 115. ■

Trailer turn signals

This warning lamp also flashes when the turn signals are operated while towing a caravan or trailer.

The warning lamp flashes when the turn signals are operated, provided a trailer is correctly attached and connected to the vehicle.

The warning lamp will not flash if one of the turn signals on the trailer fails. ■

Main beam headlights

This warning lamp lights up when the main beams are on.

The warning lamp lights up when the main beams are on or when the headlight flasher is operated.

Further information ⇒ page 115. ■

Bulb defect

The warning lamp lights up when a bulb in the vehicle's exterior lighting is defective.

The warning lamp lights up when a bulb in the vehicle's exterior lighting (e.g. left-hand main beam) is defective.

The following text is displayed in the instrument panel display[12)]: **MAIN BEAM LEFT DEFECT**. ■

Cruise control system*

The warning lamp comes on when the cruise control system is switched on.

The warning lamp lights up when the cruise control system is switched on. Further notes on the cruise control system ⇒ page 174. ■

Washer fluid

This warning lamp lights up to indicate that the windscreen washer level is too low.

This serves as a reminder to fill up the reservoir at the earliest opportunity ⇒ page 218.

The information text displayed in the instrument panel display is[13]: **REFILL WASHER FLUID** ■

Brake system* / handbrake

The warning lamp lights up if the handbrake is applied, if the brake fluid level falls too low or if there is a fault in the brake system.

This warning lamp lights up if

- If the handbrake is on

If you drive faster than 6 km/h with the handbrake on, the following message will appear in the combi-instrument display [14]: **HANDBRAKE ON.** Also, an audible warning is given.

- If the brake fluid level is too low ⇒ page 221

The following text is displayed in the instrument panel display[14]: **STOP BRAKE FLUID INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL**.

- If there is a fault in the brake system

The following text is displayed in the instrument panel display [14]: **BRAKE FAULT INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL**.

This warning lamp can light up together with the anti-lock brake system warning lamp.

WARNING

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings on ⇒ page 208, "Working in the engine compartment".**
- **If the brake warning lamp does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level ⇒ page 221, "Brake fluid" in the reservoir is too low. Risk of accident. Stop the vehicle and do not drive on. Obtain technical assistance.**
- **If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS warning lamp, the control function of the ABS could be out of action. This could cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. This could cause the rear to break away. Risk of skidding. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance.** ■

[12] Depending on the model version
[13] Depending on the model version
[14] Depending on the model version

Engine oil pressure

This warning lamp indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

If this warning symbol starts to flash, and is accompanied by three **audible warnings**, switch off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil ⇒ page 211.

The following text is displayed in the instrument panel display[15]: **STOP ENGINE OIL PRESSURE INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL**.

If the symbol flashes although the oil level is correct, *do not* drive on. The engine must not even run at idle speed. Obtain technical assistance. ■

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

A warning lamp system monitors the ABS.

The warning lamp should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. It goes out again after the system has run through an automatic test sequence.

There is a fault in the ABS if:

- The warning lamp does not light up when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning lamp does not go out again after a few seconds.
- The warning lamp lights up when the vehicle is moving.

The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (except that the ABS control function will not function). Please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop as soon as possible. For further information on the ABS see the ⇒ page 179.

If a fault occurs in the ABS, the ESP* warning lamp will also light up.

[15] Depending on the model version

Brake system fault

If the ABS warning lamp lights up together with the brake warning lamp , this indicates not only a fault in the ABS function, but also a possible fault in the brake system ⇒ .

WARNING

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings on ⇒ page 208.**
- **If the brake warning lamp should light up together with the ABS warning lamp , stop the vehicle immediately and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir ⇒ page 221, "Brake fluid". If the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" mark you must not drive on. Risk of accident. Obtain technical assistance.**
- **If the brake fluid level is correct, the fault in the brake system may have been caused by a failure of the ABS system. This could cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. This could cause the rear to break away. Risk of skidding. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance.** ■

Differential lock fault (EDL)*

*EDL operates along with the ABS in vehicles equipped with an Electronic Stabilisation Program (ESP)**

A malfunction in the EDL is indicated by the ABS warning lamp . Please take the vehicle to a qualified workshop as soon as possible. For further information on the EDL ⇒ page 182. ■

Traction control system (TCS)*

The traction control system prevents the driven wheels from spinning when the vehicle is accelerating

The warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on and should turn off after about 2 seconds.

When the TCS is operating while driving, the warning lamp flashes. If the system is deactivated or if there is any fault in the same, the warning lamp will remain lit.

It will also come on if a fault should occur in the ABS because the TCS operates in conjunction with the ABS. For further information see ⇒ page 179. ■

Soot accumulation in the diesel engine particulate filter *

if the symbol lights, soot has built up in the diesel engine particulate filter due to continuous short trips. In this case, drive the vehicle at a constant speed of at least 60 km/h (with an engine speed of about 1400 rpm) for about 10 minutes. The increase in temperature generated may burn the accumulated soot in the filter.

If the symbol is not deactivated, bring the vehicle to a specialized workshop to repair the fault.

For more information on the diesel particulate filter ⇒ page 207.

WARNING

- **The diesel engine particulate filter may reach extremely high temperatures; it should not enter into contact with flammable materials underneath the vehicle. Failure to comply could result in fire.**

Caution

Vehicles equipped with a diesel engine particulate filter must not be refuelled using biodiesel (RME), given that the fuel system may be damaged. ■

Alternator

This warning lamp signals a fault in the alternator.

The warning lamp lights up when the ignition is switched on. It should go out when the engine has started running.

If the warning lamp lights up while driving, the alternator is no longer charging the battery. You should immediately drive to the nearest qualified workshop.

You should avoid using electrical equipment that is not absolutely necessary because this will drain the battery.

If the indicator flashes, the voltage is insufficient for normal vehicle operation. ■

Tyre pressure* (!)

Fig. 48 Centre console: tyre monitor system button

The tyre monitor indicator compares wheel revolutions and uses this information to compare the diameter of each wheel using the ABS sensors. If the diameter of a wheel changes, the tyre monitor indicator lights (!). The wheel diameter changes when:

- Tyre pressure is insufficient.
- The tyre structure is damaged.
- The vehicle is unbalanced because of a load.
- The wheels of one axle are under more pressure (for example, driving with a trailer or on extreme slopes).
- The vehicle is fitted with snow chains.
- The emergency wheel is fitted.
- The wheel on one axle is changed.

Tyre pressure adjustment

Following the modification to tyre pressure or changing one or more wheels, the button ⇒ fig. 48 must be kept pressed while the ignition is on, until an acoustic signal is heard.

If the wheels are under excessive load (for example, driving with a trailer or heavy load), the tyre pressure must be increased to the recommended value for a full load (see the sticker on the inside of the fuel flap). If the tyre monitor system button is pressed the new tyre pressures are confirmed.

The tyre pressure monitor indicator (!) lights

If the tyre pressure of one wheel is much lower than the value set by the driver then the indicator lights ⇒ ⚠.

The tyre pressure monitor indicator (!) flashes

If the tyre pressure indicator flashes, this indicates a fault. Go to the nearest specialist workshop.

WARNING

- **When the tyre pressure indicator lights, reduce speed immediately and avoid any sudden manoeuvre or braking. Stop when possible, and check the tyre pressure and status.**
- **The driver is responsible for correct tyre pressure. For this reason, tyre pressure must be regularly checked.**
- **Under certain circumstances (for example, in a sports situation, in winter conditions or on a dirt track) the tyre monitor indicator may light or function incorrectly.**

Note

If the battery is disconnected, the yellow indicator (!) lights after turning the ignition on. This should turn off after a brief trip. ■

Engine management EPC

This warning lamp monitors the engine management system for petrol engines.

The warning lamp EPC (Electronic Power Control) lights up when the ignition is switched on to show that the lamp is working properly. It should go out when the engine has started running.

If a fault develops in the electronic engine management system while you are driving, this warning lamp will light up. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance. ■

Glow plug system / Engine fault

The warning lamp lights up to show that the glow plugs are preheating. It flashes if there is an engine fault.

Warning lamp is lit

The warning lamp lights up while the glow plugs are preheating. When the warning lamp goes off, the engine should be started straight away.

Warning lamp flashes

If a fault develops in the engine management system while you are driving, the glow plug lamp will flash . Take the vehicle to an Authorised Service Centre as soon as possible and have the engine checked. ■

Emission control system*

This warning lamp monitors the exhaust system.

Warning lamp flashes:

when there is misfiring that can damage the catalytic converter. Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop to have the engine checked.

The following text is displayed in the instrument panel display[16]: **EXHAUST FUMES GO TO WORKSHOP!**

Warning lamp is lit:

if a fault has developed during driving which has reduced the quality of the exhaust gas (e. g. lambda probe fault). Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop to have the engine checked.

The following text is displayed in the instrument panel display: **EXHAUST FUMES GO TO WORKSHOP!**. ■

Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)*

This warning lamp monitors the electronic stabilisation program.

This program includes the ABS, EDL and TCS.

The warning lamp has the following functions:

- It will light for about 2 seconds when the ignition is switched on while a test of the function is carried out.
- It flashes when the ESP is activated when driving.
- It will light up continuously if there is a malfunction in the ESP.

[16] Depending on the model version

- It will light up continuously if the ESP is switched off.
- It will also come on if a fault should occur in the ABS because the ESP operates in conjunction with the ABS.

If the ESP warning lamp lights up and stays on after the engine is started, this may mean that the control system has temporarily switched off the ESP. In this case the ESP can be reactivated by switching the ignition off and then on again. If the warning lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional. ■

Operating the foot brake

The footbrake must be depressed when this warning lamp lights up. This is necessary when the automatic gearbox* selector lever is moved out of the positions **P** or **N**. ■

Power steering system*

For vehicles with power steering, the level of steering assistance depends on the vehicle's speed and on the steering angle.

The warning lamp should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. It should go out when the engine has started running.

If the battery is disconnected, the indicator remains lit, even with the engine running. The warning light only goes off after a distance of approx. 50 m.

There is a fault in the electromechanical steering system if the lamp does not go out or light up whilst the vehicle is in motion. The indicator may appear in two different colours to indicate faults. If it lights yellow, this indicates a minor fault. If it lights red, seek workshop assistance immediately, if no assistance is available stop driving. Stop the vehicle and seek technical assistance. The power steering does not work if the battery is flat or if the engine is off (for example, for towing). You should take into account that you will need considerably more power than normal to steer the vehicle if the steering assistance is reduced or has failed completely.

For those vehicles fitted with ESP* the function "Recommended steering manoeuvre" is included See ⇒ page 181. ■

Brake pad wear indicator*

As the brake pad wear indicator only monitors the front brake pads, it is advisable to have the rear brake pads inspected at the same time.

The information text displayed in the instrument panel display is[17]: **CHECK BRAKE PADS**.

WARNING

Have the brake pads inspected immediately by a qualified dealership if the warning display lights up. ■

Indicator for open doors or tailgate

This indicator lights if one of the doors or the tailgate is open.

The warning light should go off when all the doors are closed correctly.

The system also works when the ignition is switched off. It should go off about 15 seconds after the vehicle is locked. ■

[17] Depending on the model version

Electronic immobiliser* “Safe”

This warning lamp flashes if an unauthorised key is used.

Inside the key there is a chip that deactivates the electronic immobiliser automatically when the key is inserted into the ignition. The immobiliser will be activated again automatically as soon as you pull the key out of the ignition lock.

The message displayed in the instrument panel display is [18]: **SAFE**. The vehicle cannot be used in that case ⇒ page 162.

The engine can, however, be started if the appropriate coded SEAT genuine key is used.

Note

The vehicle cannot be operated properly if you do not have a genuine SEAT key. ■

[18] Depending on the model version

Steering wheel controls

Using these instructions

The vehicle includes multifunction modules from where it is possible to control the audio, telephone and radio / navigation functions as well as the automatic gearbox* without needing to distract the driver.

There are three versions of the multifunction module:

- Audio version, to control the available audio functions from the steering wheel.
- Audio + Telephone version, to control the available audio functions and the telephone system from the steering wheel.

Both versions may be used to control the Audio system (Radio, CD Audio, CD mp3, CD Changer) and the radio / navigation System, in which case they also control the Navigation system.

- Automatic gearbox version* ⇒ page 170. ■

Audio system

Steering wheel audio version controls

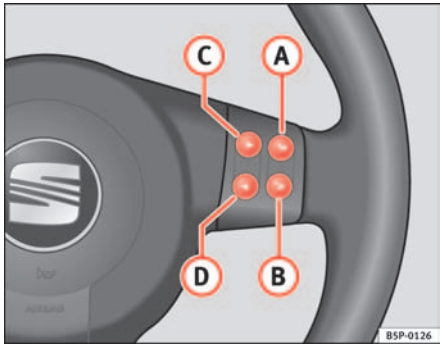

Fig. 49 Controls on the steering wheel

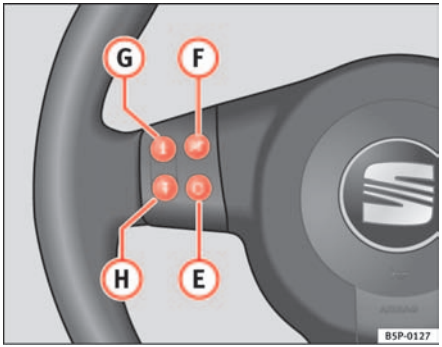

Fig. 50 Controls on the steering wheel

Button	Short press				Long press			
	Radio	CD Audio	CD mp3[a)]	CDC	Radio	CD Audio	CD mp3[a)]	CDC
A	Volume up				Continue volume up			
B	Volume down				Continue volume down			
C	Station search. Higher frequency.	Following track			Station search. Higher frequency.	Fast forward		
D	Station search. Lower frequency	Previous track			Station search. Lower frequency	Rewind		
E	Cyclic source control FM - AM - CD - CDC - FM...				No specified function			
F	Silence	Pause			No specified function			
G	Next preset	No function	Change folder (forward)	Change CD (forward)	No specified function			
H	Previous preset	No function	Change folder (back)	Change CD (Back)	No specified function			

a) Only for mp3 compatible radio.*

Steering wheel Audio + Telephone version controls

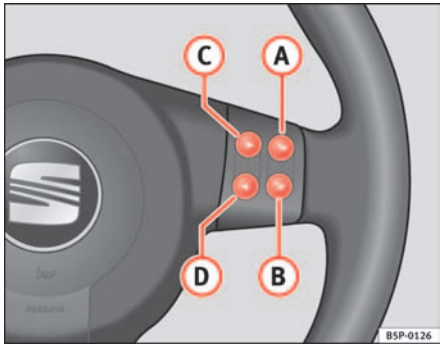

Fig. 51 Controls on the steering wheel

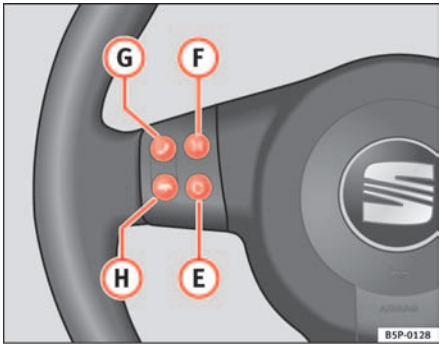

Fig. 52 Controls on the steering wheel

Button	Short press				Long press			
	Radio	CD Audio	CD mp3[a)]	CDC	Radio	CD Audio	CD mp3[a)]	CDC
A	Volume up				Continue volume up			
B	Volume down				Continue volume down			
C	Station search. Higher frequency.	Following track			Station search. Higher frequency.	Fast forward	Change folder (forward)	Fast forward
D	Station search. Lower frequency	Previous track			Station search. Lower frequency	Rewind	Change folder (Back)	Rewind

E	Cyclic source control FM - AM - CD - CDC - FM...	No specified function
F	Voice recognition activation Press to speak	No specified function
G	Make a call or Direct access to the phone book or Accept a call	No specified function
H	Terminate call or Refuse call or Quit telephone menu	No specified function

a) Only for mp3 compatible radio.*

Radio navigation system

Steering wheel audio version controls

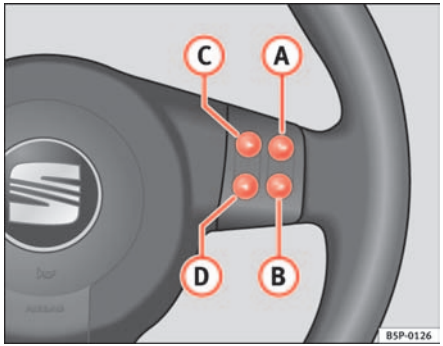

Fig. 53 Controls on the steering wheel

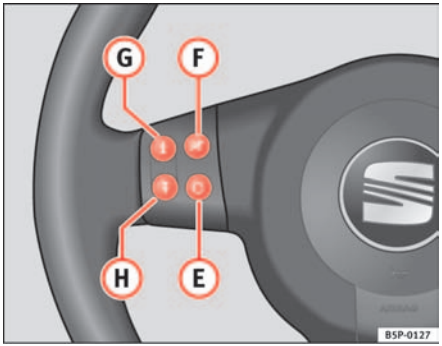

Fig. 54 Controls on the steering wheel

Button	Short press				Long press			
	Radio	CD	CD mp3[a)]	CDC	Radio	CD	CD mp3[a)]	CDC
A	Increase the source volume and the navigation message				Increase the source volume and the navigation message continuously			
B	Decrease the source volume and the navigation message				Decrease the source volume and the navigation message continuously			
C	Station search. Higher frequency.	Following track			Station search. Higher frequency.	Fast forward		

D	Station search. Lower frequency	Previous track			Station search. Lower frequency	Rewind
E b)	Cyclic change of source Radio - CD / CDC - Radio - ... *When in Navigation mode the system leaves the navigation screen.*				Repeat the last Navigation instruction *Only if the Navigation function is activated.*	
F	Silence	Pause			No specified function	
G	Next preset	No function	Change folder (forward)	Change CD (forward)	No specified function	
H	Previous preset	No function	Change folder (back)	Change CD (Back)	No specified function	

a) Only for those Radio-Navigation Systems compatible with the MP3 format

b) Use a short press with button E: depending on the equipment, you may select the radio frequency band.

Steering wheel Audio + Telephone controls

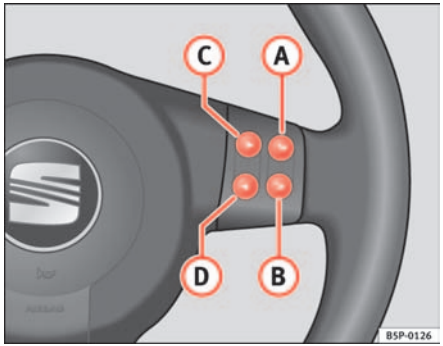

Fig. 55 Controls on the steering wheel

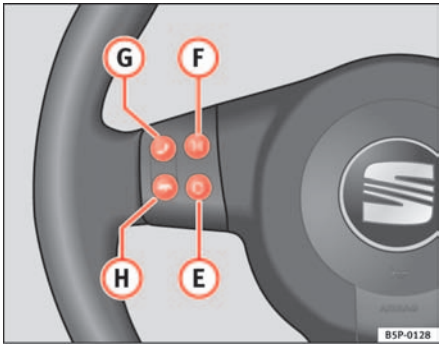

Fig. 56 Steering wheel Audio + Telephone controls

Button	Short press				Long press			
	Radio	CD	CD mp3[a)]	CDC	Radio	CD	CD mp3[a)]	CDC
A	Increase the source volume and the navigation message				Increase the source volume and the navigation message continuously			
B	Decrease the source volume and the navigation message				Decrease the source volume and the navigation message continuously			
C	Station search. Higher frequency.	Following track			Station search. Higher frequency.	Fast forward	Change folder (forward)	Fast forward
D	Station search. Lower frequency	Previous track			Station search. Lower frequency	Rewind	Change folder (Back)	Rewind

E[b)]	Cyclic change of source Radio - CD / CDC - Radio - ... *When in Navigation mode the system leaves the navigation screen.*	Repeat the last Navigation instruction *Only if the Navigation function is activated.*
F	Voice recognition activation Press to speak	No specified function
G	Make a call or Direct access to the phone book or Accept a call	No specified function
H	Terminate call or Refuse call or Quit telephone menu	No specified function

a) Only for those Radio-Navigation Systems compatible with the MP3 format

b) Use a short press with button E: depending on the equipment, you may select the radio frequency band.

Steering wheel lighting controls

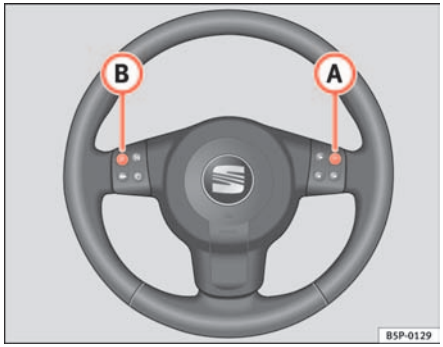

Fig. 57 Steering wheel Audio + Telephone version controls

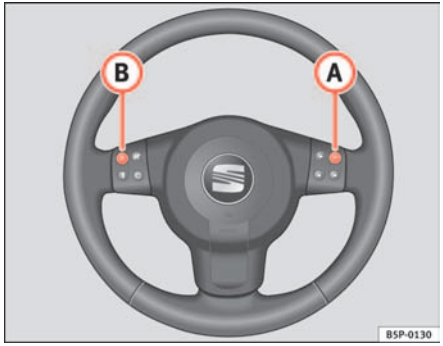

Fig. 58 Steering wheel audio version controls

The lighting is turned on by simultaneously pressing of the following keys:

	Push simultaneously...	
Audio ⇒ fig. 58	A	B
Audio + Telephone ⇒ fig. 57	A	B

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

The central locking system enables you to lock and unlock all the doors and the tailgate from one point.

Central locking can be activated using any of the following options:

- **the key**, by inserting it into the driver's door cylinder and rotating manually,
- **the central locking button**, (electronic control) in the passenger compartment ⇒ page 97,
- **the radio frequency remote control**, using the buttons on the key ⇒ page 100.

Various functions are available to improve the vehicle security:

- Locking system "Safe"
- Selective unlocking system*
- Locking system for involuntary unlocking
- Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system*
- Emergency unlocking system

Note

For anti-theft security, only the driver's door is fitted with a lock cylinder. ■

Safety system "Safe"

This is an anti-theft device consisting of a double lock for the door locks and a deactivation function for the boot in order to make forced entry more difficult.

Activation

The "safe" system is activated when the vehicle is locked using the key or the remote control.

To activate this system with the key, rotate the key once in the door lock cylinder in the locking direction.

To activate the system using the remote control, press the lock button on the remote once.

When this system is activated, it is not possible to open the doors normally, from the outside or the inside. The boot/tailgate may not be opened. The central locking button does not work.

Voluntary deactivation

The "Safe" system can be deactivated voluntarily by the user.

This is done by locking two times in quick succession (in under 2 seconds). This double locking can be executed using the key or the remote control.

Using the key, rotate the lock cylinder twice in the locking direction.

To activate the system using the remote control, press the lock button on the remote twice.

When the "Safe" system is deactivated, the alarm volumetric sensor is also deactivated. ▶

When the “Safe” system is deactivated, the doors are locked using the simple locking system, meaning that they may be opened from the interior but not from the exterior.

Involuntary deactivation

The methods described for deactivation of the “Safe” system may be executed involuntarily (for example, if we press the button 🔒 because we want to lock the vehicle, and it locks as a result, however, we are not sure that it is locked and we press the button once more within 2 seconds, we will have deactivated the “Safe” system).

Deactivation when opening

To deactivate the system on opening, see “Selective unlocking system*”.

“Safe” status

On the front left hand side door, there is a light indicator visible from the outside of the vehicle that indicates the “Safe” system status.

We can see that the “Safe” system is activated, by the flashing of the light indicator. The indicator will flash on all vehicles, whether they are fitted with an alarm or not, and until the vehicle is unlocked.

We can see that the “Safe” system is deactivated, when the light indicator flashes about seven times and turns off. If the vehicle is not fitted with an alarm then it remains off. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, once 28 seconds have passed since the indicator is switched off, it will start to flash again and continue until the vehicle is unlocked once more.

Remember:

Safe activated with or without alarm: Continuous flashing of the indicator.

Safe deactivated without alarm: The indicator flashes about seven times and turns off.

Safe deactivated with alarm: The indicator flashes seven times, turns off and then continues to flash after 28 seconds.

WARNING

No one should remain in the vehicle if the “Safe” deadlock mechanism has been activated. It is not possible to open the doors from the inside or the outside and this would make any outside intervention difficult in case of emergency. Danger of death. People could become trapped inside in an emergency. ■

Selective unlocking system*

This system allows for unlocking only the driver’s door, or all the vehicle.

Driver’s door unlock button

This is done by a simple unlocking (once). This can be done with the key or the remote control.

With the key, rotate the key once in the lock cylinder in the unlock direction. The driver’s door will be released from the “Safe” system, unlocked and may be opened. Once the door is opened, 15 seconds remain for turning on the ignition, in which moment, the “Safe” system will be deactivated on the remaining doors and the light indicator will be turned off. For vehicles fitted with an alarm, this system is deactivated.

Using the remote control, press the unlock button on the remote 🔓 once. The “Safe” system is deactivated for all the vehicle, only the driver’s door is unlocked for opening, the alarm is turned off as is the light indicator.

Unlocking all doors and the boot

So that all the doors and the boot can be opened, the unlock button 🔓 on the remote must be pressed twice.

The button must be pressed twice in under 2 seconds and this will deactivate the “Safe” system for all the vehicle, all doors will be unlocked and the boot ▶

will be activated. The indicator will be turned off as will be the alarm for those vehicles fitted with one.

Unlocking the boot

See ⇒ page 100 and ⇒ page 104. ■

Locking system for involuntary unlocking

This is an anti-theft system and will avoid situations where the vehicle is left open unintentionally

The vehicle will be re-locked automatically, if it is unlocked and neither the boot nor any of the doors are opened within 30 seconds. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake. ■

Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system*

This is a safety system to prevent access to the vehicle from the exterior when the vehicle is in transit (for example, when stopped at a traffic light).

Locking

The doors and the boot are automatically locked when vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

If the vehicle is stopped and one of the doors is opened, when the vehicle moves off again and exceeds a speed of 15 km/h the unlocked door(s) will be locked once more.

Unlocking

The driver's door automatically unlocks when the key is removed from the ignition.

Each door may be unlocked and opened from the interior (for example when a passenger gets out). For this, simply operate the lever on the inside of the door.

WARNING

When the vehicle is in motion, the internal door release levers should not be operated, this could cause a door to open. ■

Emergency unlocking system

The entire vehicle is unlocked if the airbags are triggered during an accident, except for the boot. It is possible to lock the vehicle from inside using the central locking, after turning the ignition off and back on again.

If the doors must be locked from the outside, see "Manually locking the doors". ■

Emergency manual locking

This permits mechanical locking of the doors in case of central locking system failure.

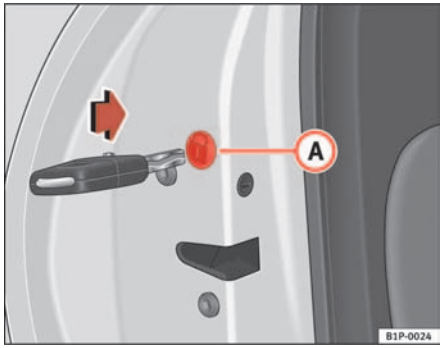

Fig. 59 Locking the doors manually

Locking the driver's door manually

Insert the key in the door lock cylinder and rotate in a clockwise direction for the left hand side door and anti-clockwise for the right hand side door.

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside.

Manual (emergency) locking of the remaining doors

Open the door and remove the cap (A) ⇒ fig. 59 printed with a lock image. This will expose a circular element with a groove in the centre. Insert the key into the groove and rotate the element clockwise for the right hand side doors and anti-clockwise for the left hand side doors.

Replace the cap and close the door. Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside.

Unlocking the manually (emergency) locked driver's door

Insert the key in the door lock cylinder and rotate anti-clockwise for the left hand side doors and clockwise for the right hand side doors.

The door lock is released and the door may be opened using the exterior door handle.

Unlocking the remaining manually (emergency) locked doors

First the driver's door must be unlocked to gain entry to the vehicle. Operate the internal door handle for the required door. If the child safety lock is activated on the rear doors, when the interior door release lever is operated the door is unlocked but does not open. The exterior door handle may now be used to open the door.

Note

Once the vehicle is open, if you wish to lock it manually (emergency locking), repeat the previous instructions. ■

Central locking button

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked from the inside using the central locking button.

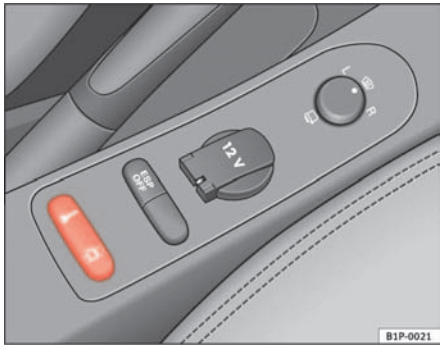

Fig. 60 Detail of rear left door central locking button

Locking the vehicle

– Press the button ⇒ ⚠.

Unlocking the doors

– Press the button .

The central locking button is still operative when the ignition is switched off. Except, if the "safe" security system is activated.

Please note the following when you use the central locking button to lock your vehicle:

- It will not be possible to open the doors or the tailgate from the *outside* (this may offer extra safety, for instance when stopped at traffic lights).
- Neither the driver's door nor the passenger's door can be locked once opened. This prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.
- Repeated operation of the central locking will deactivate the central locking button for 30 seconds. Once this time has passed, the button may be used once more.
- There is a danger that the key may remain inside the vehicle, if the vehicle is locked using the central locking button when the driver's door is closed and, for example, the passenger door open. If this door is closed, then the keys will remain inside the vehicle.
- All doors may be locked separately from inside the car. Do this by pulling the door release lever *once*.

WARNING

- **If the vehicle is locked, children and disabled people may be trapped inside.**
- **The central locking button is not operative in the following cases.**
- **When the vehicle is locked from the outside (using the remote or the key).**
- **While the ignition is not activated after unlocking the door lock cylinder with the key.**

Note

- Vehicle locked, button amber colour
- Vehicle unlocked, button red ■

Childproof locks

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors being opened from the inside. This system prevents minors from opening a door accidentally while the vehicle is moving.

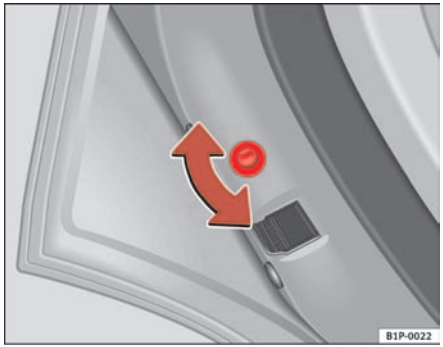

Fig. 61 Child safety lock on the left hand side door

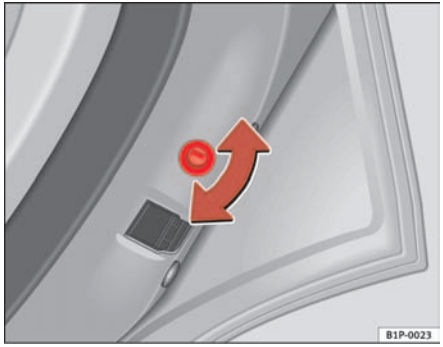

Fig. 62 Child safety lock on the right hand side door

This function is independent of the electronic opening and locking systems of the vehicle. It only affects the rear doors. It is only possible to activate it and deactivate it manually, as described below:

Activating the childproof lock

– Unlock the car and open the door you wish to childproof.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key, clockwise for the left hand side doors, and anti-clockwise for the right hand side doors ⇒ fig. 61, ⇒ fig. 62.

Deactivating the childproof lock

– Unlock the car and open the door for which you wish to deactivate the childproof lock.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key clockwise for the right hand side doors and anti-clockwise for the left hand side doors ⇒ fig. 61, ⇒ fig. 62.

When the childproof lock is activated, the door can be opened from the outside only. The childproof lock can be activated and deactivated using the key in the groove when the door is open, as described above. ■

Keys

Key set

The set of keys includes a remote control, a key without a remote control and a key tab with the number of the key.

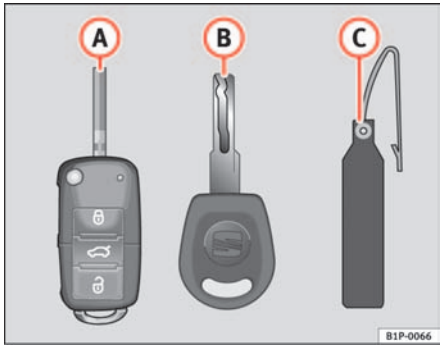

Fig. 63 Set of keys

The key set belonging to your vehicle consists of the following items:

- one remote control key ⇒ fig. 63 (A) with folding key bit,
- one key without remote control (B),
- one key tab (C) with the key number.

Plastic key tab

Spare keys cannot be issued without the key number on the key tab ⇒ fig. 63 (B). Therefore:

- Always keep the key tab in a safe place.
- Never leave the key tab in the vehicle.

If you sell the vehicle, please give the plastic key tab to the new owner.

Duplicate keys

If you need a replacement key, take your key tab to an Authorised Service Centre.

WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the keys can result in critical injuries.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle; in case of emergency they may not be able to leave the vehicle or look after themselves.**
- **Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e.g. electric windows). Risk of accident. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency.**
- **Never leave any of the vehicle keys in the vehicle. Unauthorised use of your vehicle could result in injury, damage or theft. Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident. The steering lock could engage suddenly, and you would not be able to steer the vehicle.**

Caution

There are electronic components in the key and remote control. Protect the keys from moisture and excessive vibration. ■

Radio frequency remote control

Locking and unlocking the vehicle

The remote control key can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle from a distance.

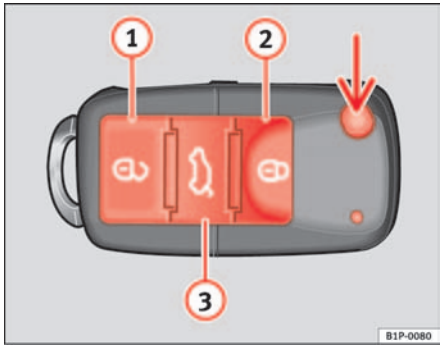

Fig. 64 Assignment of buttons on the remote control key

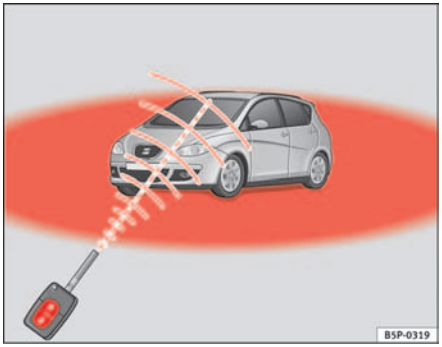

Fig. 65 Range of the remote control

Using the button ⇒ fig. 64 (arrow) on the control, the key shaft is released.

Unlocking the vehicle ⇒ fig. 64 (1) .

Locking the vehicle ⇒ fig. 64 (2)

Unlocking the tailgate. Press the button ⇒ fig. 64 (3) until all indicators on the vehicle briefly flash. When the unlocking button (3) is pressed, 2 minutes remain for opening the door. Once this time has passed, it will lock once more.

Also, the battery indicator on the key ⇒ fig. 64, will flash.

The remote control transmitter and the batteries are integrated in the key. The receiver is in the interior of the vehicle. The maximum range of the remote control depends on various conditions. The range is reduced when the batteries start to lose power.

Selective unlocking*

When the button ⇒ fig. 64 (1) is used the driver's door is unlocked, all others remain locked.

Press the button ⇒ fig. 64 (1) twice to unlock all doors. ▶

WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the key can result in critical injuries.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle; in case of emergency they may not be able to leave the vehicle or look after themselves.**
- **Never leave any of the vehicle keys in the vehicle. This could result in serious injuries, accidents or the theft of your vehicle. Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e.g. electric windows). Risk of accident. The vehicle can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency.**

Note

- The radio-frequency remote control can also be programmed so that only the driver's door is unlocked the first time that the unlocking button on the radio frequency remote control key is pressed. When the button is pressed once more, all doors and the tailgate will be unlocked.
- The remote control functions only when you are in range ⇒ page 100, fig. 65 (red area).
- If the vehicle is unlocked using the 🔓 (1) button, the vehicle will be locked again automatically if any of the doors or the tailgate are not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake.
- If the vehicle cannot be opened and closed using the remote control, the remote control key will have to be re-synchronised ⇒ page 101. ■

Changing the battery

If the battery indicator does not flash when the buttons are pushed, the battery must be replaced.

Caution

Use of inappropriate batteries may damage the radio frequency remote control. For this reason, always replace the dead battery with another of the same size and power.

For the sake of the environment

The flat batteries must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment. ■

Synchronising the remote control key

Synchronising the remote control key

– Use both keys that have been delivered with the vehicle ⇒ page 99, fig. 63, the key fitted with the remote control (A) and the normal key (B).

– Unlock the vehicle from the driver side door using the key without the remote.

– Turn the ignition ON using the key without the remote control.

– Lock the vehicle using the driver side door lock with the remote control key ⇒ page 100, fig. 64.

– **In a time of maximum 30 seconds the following operations must be carried out:** ▶

– Operate the button once for locking on the remote control, the indicators will flash.

– Operate the button once for unlocking on the remote control for more than 2 seconds.

– The key will have been programmed and the vehicle will unlock, confirming at the same time the synchronisation.

It is possible that the vehicle could no longer be opened and closed with the remote control if the button is repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the radio frequency remote control. The remote control key will have to be resynchronised.

Spare remote control keys are available from Authorised Service Centres, they must be matched to the locking system.

Up to eight remote control keys can be used. ■

Anti-theft alarm system*

Description of anti-theft alarm system*

The anti-theft alarm triggers an alarm if unauthorised movements are detected around the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle or steal it. Audible and visible alarms are triggered if the car is opened using the mechanical key, or if unauthorised access is gained to the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system is automatically switched on when the vehicle is locked. The system is then primed.

When does the system trigger an alarm?

The system triggers an alarm if the following unauthorised actions are carried out when the car is locked:

- Mechanical opening of the vehicle with the vehicle key
- Opening a door
- Opening the bonnet
- Opening the tailgate
- Switching on the ignition
- Movements in the vehicle
- Undue manipulation of the alarm
- Battery handling

The horn sounds and the indicators flash for approx. 30 seconds. This may be repeated up to 10 times depending on the country.

Opening the doors mechanically (emergency opening)

If the remote control function fails, you will have to use the key to unlock the car. This is done as follows:

- Unfold the key by pressing the button shown by the (arrow).
- Use the lock on the driver door to unlock the vehicle. The anti-theft alarm system remains active, but an alarm is not triggered immediately.
- Switch on the ignition within 15 seconds. When the ignition is switched on, the electronic immobiliser recognises a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system. If you do not switch on the ignition within 15 seconds, the alarm is triggered.

How is the alarm switched off?

When the vehicle is unlocked via the unlocking button of the remote control or when the key is inserted in the ignition lock. ▶

Note

- If, after the alarm goes off, access is gained to a second secured zone (e.g. the tailgate is opened after a door has been opened), the warning signal is triggered again.
- Vehicle monitoring remains active even if the battery is disconnected or not working for any reason.
- The alarm is triggered immediately if one of the battery cables is disconnected while the alarm system is active. ■

Volumetric sensor*

Monitoring or control function incorporated in the anti-theft alarm that detects unauthorized vehicle entry using ultrasound.*

The system consists of 3 sensors, 2 emitters and a receptor.

Activation

– It is automatically turned on with the anti-theft alarm, when the vehicle is locked mechanically with the key and when the button 🔒 on the remote control is used.

Deactivation

– Press the button 🔒 on the remote control twice. Only the volumetric sensor is deactivated. The alarm system remains activated.

WARNING

- **The "safe" security system remains deactivated if the volumetric sensor is deactivated.**
- **For those vehicles in which a separate sunblind is fitted in the passenger compartment, the alarm will not function correctly due to interference with the sensor.**

Note

- If the alarm has been triggered by the volumetric sensor, this will be indicated by a flashing of the indicator on the driver's door. This flashing will be different to that for an activated alarm. ■

Tailgate

Opening and locking

The operation of the tailgate opening system is electric. It is activated by using the handle on the tailgate

Fig. 66 Tailgate: Opening from the outside

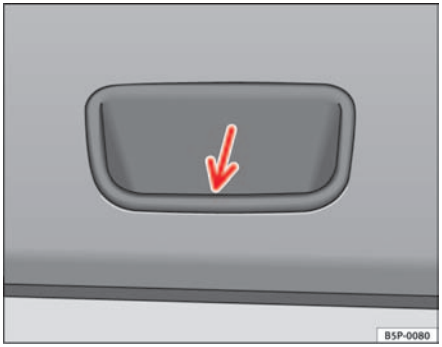

Fig. 67 Detail of the tailgate inner trim: recessed handle for closing the tailgate

Opening the tailgate

– Pull on the release lever and lift the tailgate ⇒ fig. 66. The tailgate will then open.

Closing the tailgate

– Grip the tailgate by one of the two handles on the interior lining and close it, using a light movement.

The system may or may not operate depending on the situation of the vehicle.

If the tailgate is locked then it cannot be opened, however if it is unlocked then the opening system is operative and the boot may be opened.

To the locking / unlocking status, press the button or the button 1 on the remote control key.

A warning appears in the instrument panel if the tailgate is open or not properly closed.* An audible warning is also given if the tailgate is opened while the vehicle is moving faster than 6 km/h.*

WARNING

- **Always close the tailgate properly. Risk of accident or injury.**
- **The tailgate must not be opened when the reverse or rear fog lights are lit. This may damage the lighting units.**
- **Do not close the tailgate by pushing it down with your hand on the window. The glass could shatter. Risk of injury!**
- **Ensure the tailgate is locked after closing. If not, it may open unexpectedly while driving.**
- **If the tailgate is not properly closed, open it with the handle and close it correctly. Do no try to close it by pressing on the tailgate surface as this may lead to a damaged surface.**
- **Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. A locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year. This could cause serious injuries/illness. It could even have fatal consequences. Close and lock both the tailgate and all the other doors when you are not using the vehicle.**
- **Never close the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of the tailgate.**
- **Never drive with the tailgate open or half-closed, exhaust gasses may penetrate into the interior of the vehicle. Danger of poisoning!**
- **If only the boot is opened then do not leave the key inside. The vehicle may not be opened if the key is left inside.** ■

Emergency opening

This allows the vehicle to be opened if the central locking does not operate (for example if the battery is flat)

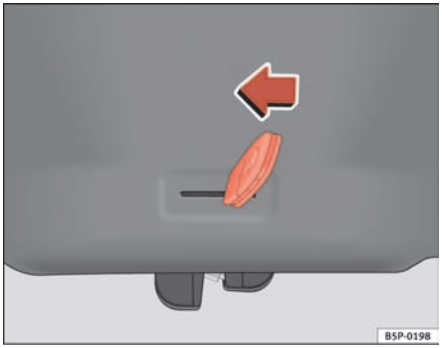

Fig. 68 Tailgate: emergency opening

There is a groove in the boot allowing access to the emergency opening mechanism.

Opening the tailgate from inside the luggage compartment

– Insert the key bit in the groove and unlock the locking system, turning the key from right to left, as shown by the arrow ⇒ fig. 68. ■

Windows

Opening or closing the windows electrically

The front and rear electric windows can be operated using the controls in the driver's door.

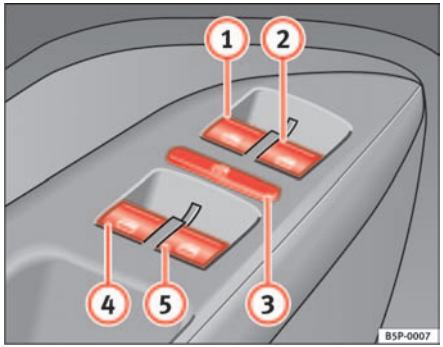

Fig. 69 Section of the driver door: controls for the front and rear windows

Opening and closing the windows

– Press the button to open a window.

– Pull button to close a window ⇒ ⚠.

Always close the windows fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒ ⚠.

You can use the electric windows for approx. 10 minutes after switching off the ignition if neither the driver door nor the front passenger door has been opened and the key has not been removed from the ignition.

Buttons in the driver door

1 Button for window in front left door
2 Button for window in front right door

Buttons for rear windows*

3 Safety switch for deactivating the electric window buttons in the rear doors
4 Button for window in rear left door
5 Button for window in rear right door

Safety switch *

Safety switch 3 in the driver door can be used to disable the electric window buttons in the rear doors.

Safety switch not pushed in: the buttons in the rear doors are enabled.

Safety switch pushed in: the buttons in the rear doors are disabled.

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the electric windows can result in injury.**
- **Never close the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of a window.**
- **Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle, particularly if they have access to the keys. Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e.g. electric windows). Risk of accident. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency.**
- **The electric windows will work until the key has been removed from the ignition and one of the front doors has been opened.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If necessary, use the safety switch to disable the rear electric windows. Make sure that they have been disabled.**

Note

If the window is not able to close because it is stiff or because of an obstruction, the window will automatically open again ⇒ page 107. If this happens, check why the window could not be closed before attempting to close it again. ■

One-touch opening and closing

One-touch opening and closing means you do not have to hold down the button.

One-touch closing

– Pull up the button for the window briefly to the second position. The window closes fully.

One-touch opening

– Push down the button for the window briefly to the second position. The window opens fully.

Restoring one-touch opening and closing

– Close all windows.

– Use the key to lock the vehicle from outside and hold the key in the lock position for at least one second. The one-touch function is now ready for operation.

The buttons ⇒ page 106, fig. 69 (1) and (2) have two levels for opening the window and two for closing it. This makes it easier to open or close windows to the desired position.

One-touch closing does not work when the ignition has been switched off, even if the key is in the ignition.

The automatic open and close function will not work if the battery has been temporarily disconnected, or if the battery is flat. The function then has to be reactivated.

The one-touch function and roll-back function will not work if there is a malfunction in the electric windows. Contact an Authorised Service Centre. ■

Roll-back function

The windows have a roll-back function. This reduces the risk of injuries when the windows are closing.

- If a window is obstructed when closing automatically, the window stops at this point and lowers immediately ⇒ ⚠.
- If this happens, check immediately (within 10 seconds) why the window could not be closed before attempting to close it again. After 10 seconds the normal automatic function resumes.
- If the window is still obstructed, the window stops at this point.
- If there is no obvious reason why the window cannot be closed, try to close it again within five seconds.

If you wait longer than 5 - 10 seconds, the window will open fully when you operate one of the buttons. One-touch closing is reactivated.

The one-touch function and roll-back function will not work if there is a malfunction in the electric windows. Contact an Authorised Service Centre. ▶

WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the electric windows can result in injury.**
- **Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle, even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Please ensure that children are never left unsupervised in the vehicle.**
- **The electric windows will work until the key has been removed from the ignition and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **Never close the tailgate without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of a window.**
- **Never allow people to remain in the vehicle when you close the vehicle from the outside. The windows cannot be opened even in an emergency.**

Note

The roll-back function is deactivated if the windows are closed from the outside of the vehicle using the ignition key for convenience closing ⇒ page 108. ■

Convenience opening and closing*

Using the door lock

– Hold the key in the door lock of the driver door in either the locking or the unlocking position until all windows are either opened or closed.

– Release the key to interrupt this function.

– The indicators will flash once the windows are completely closed.

Using the remote control

– Push the lock button on the remote control for about 3 seconds. All windows which function electrically will be either opened or closed.

– Press the unlock button to interrupt the function.

– The indicators will flash once the windows are completely closed. ■

Sliding/tilting roof*

Opening and closing the sliding/tilting roof

The sliding/tilting sunroof is opened and closed using the rotary button when the ignition is switched on.

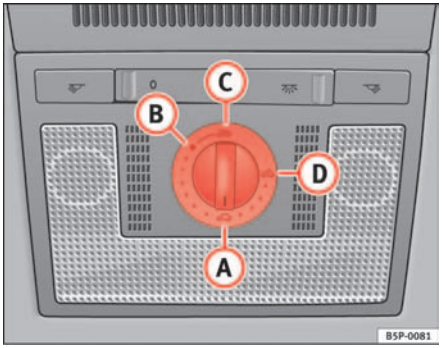

Fig. 70 Detail of the sunroof: rotary button for sliding/tilting sunroof ▶

Closing the sliding/tilting sunroof

– Turn the rotary button to position (A) ⇒ page 108, fig. 70 ⇒ ⚠.

Opening/tilting the sliding/tilting sunroof

– Turn the rotary button to position (B). The sunroof opens to the convenience position where wind noise is reduced.

– To open the roof further, turn the switch to position (C) and hold the switch in this position until the roof opens to the desired position.

Tilting the sliding/tilting sunroof

– Turn the rotary button to position (D).

Always close the sliding/tilting roof fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒ ⚠.

The sliding/tilting sunroof can be operated for up to about ten minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door and the front passenger door are not opened.

Sunroof blind

The sunroof blind is opened together with the sliding/tilting roof. If required, it can be closed by hand when the sunroof is closed.

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the sliding/tilting sunroof can result in injury.**
- **Never close the sliding/tilting sunroof without observing and ensuring it is clear, to do otherwise could cause serious injury to you and others. Make sure that no one is in the path of the sliding/tilting sunroof.**
- **Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle, particularly if they have access to the keys. Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e.g. electric sliding/tilting sunroof). Risk of accident! The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency.**
- **The sliding/tilting sunroof continues to function until one of the front doors is opened and the key removed from the ignition.** ■

Convenience closing*

Using the door lock

– Hold the key in the door lock of the driver's door in the locking position until the sliding/tilting sunroof is closed.

– Release the key to interrupt this function.

Using the remote control

– Push the lock button on the remote control for about 3 seconds. The sliding/tilting sunroof is closed.

– Press the unlock button to interrupt the function.

Note

The sliding/tilting sunroof rotary button remains in the last position selected if the roof is closed using convenience closing from outside the vehicle and will have to be re-positioned the next time you drive. ■

Roll-back function of the sliding/tilting roof*

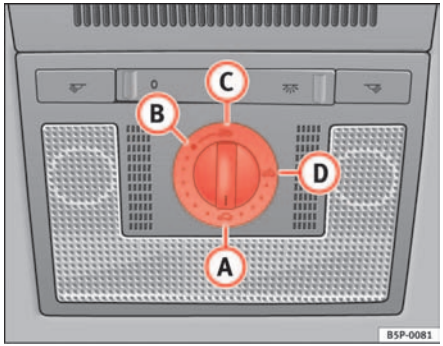

Fig. 71 Detail of the sunroof: rotary button for sliding/tilting sunroof

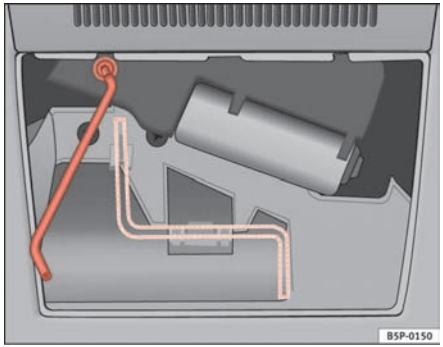

Fig. 72 Emergency closing handle

The sliding/tilting roof has a *roll-back function* which prevents larger objects getting trapped when the roof is closed. The roll-back function does not prevent fingers getting pinched against the roof opening. The sliding/tilting sunroof stops and opens again immediately if it is obstructed when closing.

If the sliding/tilting roof has been opened again by the roll-back function, it can be closed only by pressing the rotary button at the front in position (A) ⇒ fig. 71 until the sliding/tilting roof has closed fully. **Please note that the sunroof will now close without the roll-back function.**

Operation in the event of a breakdown

In the event of a breakdown, the sunroof may be closed manually.

- Remove the plastic cover by inserting a screwdriver in the rear section.
- Remove the lever from the cover fastening, insert it in the opening as far as possible (pushing against the spring) and close the sliding roof.
- Fit the lever back into position. ■

Lights and visibility

Lights

Switching lights on and off

Fig. 73 Detail of the dash panel: Switch for lights, fog lights and rear fog light

Switching on the side lights

– Turn the light switch ⇒ fig. 73 to position ≣D.

Switching on dipped headlights

– Turn the light switch to position ≣D.

Switching off the lights

– Turn the light switch to position 0.

Switching on the fog lights*

– Pull the switch out of position ≣D or ≣D to the first stop. The symbol ≣D in the light switch lights up.

Switching on the rear fog lights (vehicles with front fog lights)

– Pull the switch out of position ≣D or ≣D to the second stop ⇒ ⚠. A warning lamp lights up in the control panel.

Switching on the rear fog lights (vehicles with no front fog lights)

– Pull the switch out of position ≣D to the last stop. A warning lamp lights up in the instrument panel.

⚠ WARNING

Never drive with just the side lights on. Risk of accident. The side lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you. Always use your dipped headlights if it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

- The dipped beam headlights will only work with the ignition on. The side lights come on automatically when the ignition is turned off.
- If the lights are left on after the key has been taken out of the ignition lock, a buzzer sounds when the driver door is opened. This is a reminder to switch off the lights.
- If the coming home* feature is activated, the acoustic signal for the dipped beam headlights will not sound, it will sound if the position lights are activated.

- The rear fog light is so bright that it can dazzle drivers behind you. You should use the rear fog light only when visibility is very poor.
- If you are towing a trailer equipped with a rear fog light on a vehicle with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the rear fog light on the car will automatically be switched off.
- The use of the lighting described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements. ■

Automatic lighting

Fig. 74 Automatic lighting

Activation

– Rotate the switch to the position “Auto”, this indication will light up.

When the switch is in this position, as soon as visibility conditions are reduced, the lights are automatically activated. The indication “Auto”, changes to red.

Automatic lighting

If the automatic headlight control is switched on, dipped headlights are automatically switched on by a light-sensitive sensor if you drive into a tunnel, for example.

The rain function switches on the headlights if the continuous wipe function is switched on for longer than 5 seconds. The dipped beam headlights are switched off if the continuous wipe or the intermittent wipe functions are switched off for longer than 255 seconds.

WARNING

- **If automatic headlight control is switched on, the headlights will not be switched on in fog or heavy rain. Therefore, the dipped beam must be switched on.**

Note

- For those vehicles with the automatic headlight system, when the key is removed from the ignition, the acoustic signal will only sound if the light control is in the position or if the vehicle is not fitted with the coming home function.
- If the daylight driving automatic light function is switched on, the fog lights or rear fog light cannot be switched on in addition.
- The use of the lighting described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements.
- Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the sensor. This may cause disruptions or faults in the automatic lighting system. ■

Coming home / leaving home function*

After dark the area around the car is lit up with the aid of the coming home / leaving home function.

Coming home function*

To activate the function

– Put the light switch into the position ≣D or in the “Auto” position for those vehicles fitted with the automatic lighting function.

– Remove key from ignition switch.

To deactivate the function

– Turn light switch to position 0.

When the system is activated and it is **dark**, the coming home function will illuminate the vehicle and its surroundings by switching on the dipped headlights, rear lights and number plate lights when the driver’s door is opened.

While one of the doors or the tailgate are open, the dipped headlights, the rear lights and the registration plate lighting remain on for about 90 seconds. If, before this time is up, all of the doors and the tailgate are closed, another 40 seconds of lighting is given. However, if all of the doors and the tailgate are closed after the 90 seconds have passed, the system will be deactivated and the lights will not come on.

If you wish to reactivate the system, you must start from the beginning.

The lighting time is defined at the time of manufacture.

Leaving home function*

The function is activated when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control. In the dark, the leaving home function will light the dipped beam lights, the rear lights and the registration plate lighting for about 40 seconds.

If the light switch is at “0” the leaving home function is deactivated.

Note

- If the vehicle is used often during the night for short trips using the coming home function, this will place a heavy demand on the battery. To avoid this, make longer journeys whenever possible.
- Observe all relevant statutory requirements when using the lighting systems described here.
- For those vehicles fitted with the “Dot Matrix” display, the delay in turning off the headlights (about 40 seconds) can be adjusted using the “Configuration, lights and visibility” menu. ■

Instrument and switch lighting / Headlight range control

Fig. 75 Detail of the dash panel: Regulation for instrument and switch illumination and headlight range control

Instrument and switch lighting (1)

When the headlights are switched on, the brightness of the instruments and switch lighting can be regulated to suit your requirements by turning the thumb wheel ⇒ page 113, fig. 75 (1).

Headlight range control (2)

Using the electrical headlight range control, (2) you can adjust the headlight range to the load level that is being carried in the vehicle. In this way it is possible to avoid dazzling oncoming traffic more than necessary. At the same time, the driver has the best possible lighting for the road ahead using the correct headlight settings.

The headlights can only be adjusted when the dipped beam is switched on. To lower the beam, turn the thumb wheel down (2) from the basic setting **0**.

Those vehicles fitted with xenon gas discharge headlights are fitted with an automatic headlight range system.

dynamic headlight range control

Vehicles with **gas discharge lamps** ("xenon lamps") are equipped with **dynamic headlight range control**. This means that the headlights will be adjusted to suit the load level of the vehicle and "bouncing movements" when pulling off and braking are automatically compensated for.

Vehicles with gas discharge lamps do not have headlight range regulation. ■

Hazard warning lights ⚠

The hazard warning lights are used to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle in emergencies.

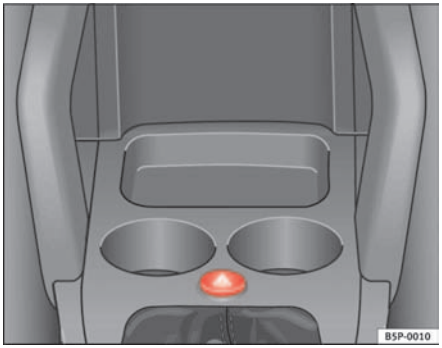

Fig. 76 Detail of the dash panel: Hazard warning light switch

If your vehicle breaks down:

1. Park your vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic.
2. Press the button to switch on the hazard warning lights ⇒ ⚠.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Apply the handbrake.
5. On a manual gearbox engage 1st gear, and for an automatic move the selector lever to **P**.
6. Use the warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle. ▶

7. Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.

You should switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users, for instance when:

- reaching the tail end of a traffic jam
- there is an emergency
- your vehicle breaks down due to a technical defect
- you are towing another vehicle or your vehicle is being towed.

All turn signals flash simultaneously when the hazard warning lights are switched on. That is that the two turn signal indicator lamps ⇦ ⇨ and the indicator lamp in the switch ⚠ will flash at the same time. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Turning on the emergency indicators

The emergency indicators will turn on automatically in the event of sudden braking at a speed over 60 km/h, or ifthe ABS acts for a long period, as a warning for following vehicles. They will turn off automatically if the vehicle accelerates, or continues to drive at over 40 km/h.

WARNING

- **The risk of an accident increases if your vehicle breaks down. Always use the hazard warning lights and a warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your stationary vehicle.**
- **Never park where the catalytic converter could come into contact with inflammable materials under the vehicle, for example dry grass or spilt petrol. This could start a fire!**

Note

- The battery will run down if the hazard warning lights are left on for a long time, even if the ignition is switched off.
- The use of the hazard warning lights described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements. ■

Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

The turn signal and main beam lever also operates the parking lights and the headlight flasher.

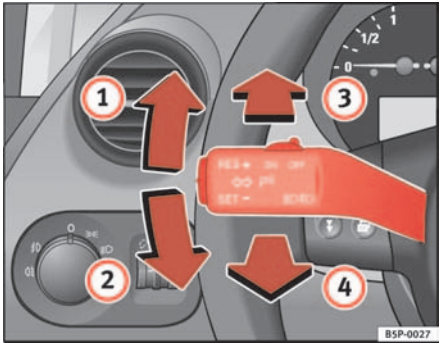

Fig. 77 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

The turn signal and main beam headlight lever has the following functions:

Switching on the turn signals

– Move the lever all the way up ⇒ fig. 77 (1) to indicate **right**, and all the way down (2) to indicate **left**. ▶

Signalling a lane change

– Push the lever up (1) or down (2) to the point where you incur resistance and then release the lever. The turn signal will flash several times. The corresponding warning lamp will also flash.

Switching main beam on and off

– Turn the light switch to position ≡D.

– Press the lever forward ⇒ page 115, fig. 77 (3) to switch on the main beams.

– Pull the lever back towards you to switch the main beam headlights off again.

Headlight flasher

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (4) to operate the flasher.

Switching on parking lights

– Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the lock.

– Move the lever up or down to turn on the right or left-hand parking lights respectively.

WARNING

The main beam can dazzle other drivers. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.

Note

- The *turn signals* only work when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning lamp ⇦ or ⇨ flashes in the combi-instrument. The warning lamp ⇦⇨ flashes when the turn signals are operated, provided a trailer is correctly attached and connected to the vehicle. If a turn signal bulb is defective, the warning lamp flashes at double speed. If the trailer turn signal bulbs are damaged, warning lamp ⇦⇨ does not light up. You should have the bulb replaced.
- The *main beam headlights* can only be switched on if the dipped beam headlights are already on. The warning lamp ≡D then comes on in the combi-instrument.
- The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as you pull the lever – even if no other lights are switched on. The warning lamp ≡D then comes on in the combi-instrument.
- When the *parking lights* are switched on, the headlight and the rear light on the corresponding side of the vehicle light up. The parking lights will only work if the key is removed from the ignition. If the lights are switched on, a **buzzer** gives an audible warning while the driver door is open.
- If the turn signal lever is left on after the key has been taken out of the ignition lock, an acoustic signal sounds when the driver door is opened. This is a reminder to switch off the turn signal, unless of course you wish to leave the parking light on. ■

Interior lights

Front interior light type 1

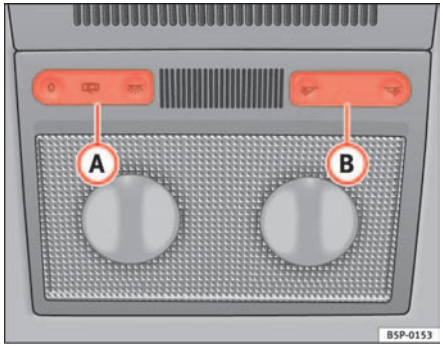

Fig. 78 Detail of the roof: Front reading light

The switch (A) ⇒ fig. 78 is used to select the following positions:

Courtesy light position

Rocker switch in flat position (not activated). The interior lights are automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked or the key removed from the ignition lock and turn off about 20 seconds after the closure of the doors. The interior lights are switched off when the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is switched on.

Interior light switched on

Push the switch to the position .

Interior light switched off O

Push the switch to the position O ⇒ fig. 78.

Note

If not all the vehicle doors are closed, the interior lights will be switched off after approx. 10 minutes, providing the key has been removed and the courtesy light position selected. This prevents the battery discharging. ■

Front interior light type 2

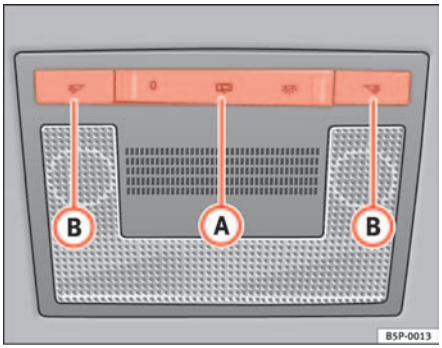

Fig. 79 Detail of the roof: Front reading light

The switch (A) ⇒ fig. 79 is used to select the following positions:

Courtesy light position

Rocker switch in flat position (not activated). The interior lights are automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked or the key removed from the ignition lock and turn off about 20 seconds after the closure of the doors. The interior lights are switched off when the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is switched on.

Interior light switched on

Push the switch to the position .

Interior light switched off O

Push the switch to the position O ⇒ page 117, fig. 79.

Note

If not all the vehicle doors are closed, the interior lights will be switched off after approx. 10 minutes, providing the key has been removed and the courtesy light position selected. This prevents the battery discharging. ■

Front reading lights

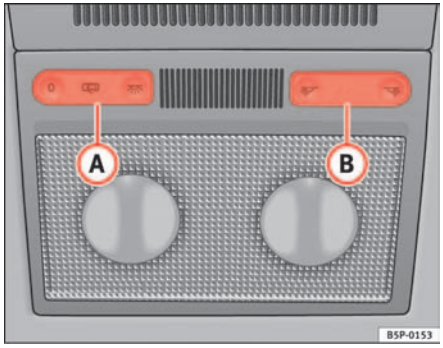

Fig. 80 Detail of the roof: Front reading light type 1

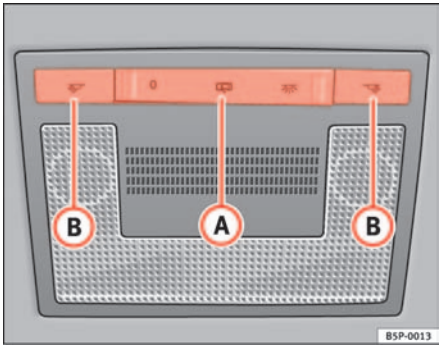

Fig. 81 Detail of the roof: Front reading light type 2

Switching on the reading light

Press the corresponding button ⇒ fig. 80 (B) and ⇒ fig. 81 (B) to switch on the reading light.

Switching off the reading lights

Press the corresponding button to switch off the reading light. ■

Rear interior and reading lights*

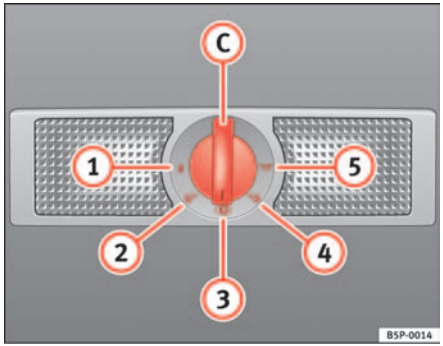

Fig. 82 Detail of the roof: Rear interior light and reading lights

The switch ⇒ fig. 82 (C) is used to select the following positions:

Interior light switched off 0

In switch position ⇒ fig. 82 (1), the interior and reading lights are switched off.

Switching on the reading light

Turn the switch to position (2) (left reading light) or to position (4) (right reading light).

Courtesy light position

Turn the control to position (3). The interior lights are automatically switched on when the vehicle is unlocked or the key removed from the ignition lock The light turns off about 20 seconds after the closure of the doors. The interior lights are switched off when the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is switched on.

Interior lights or both reading lights switched on

Turn the control to position (5).

Note

If not all the vehicle doors are closed, the interior lights will be switched off after approx. 10 minutes, providing the key has been removed and the courtesy light position selected. This prevents the battery discharging. ■

Visibility

Sun visors

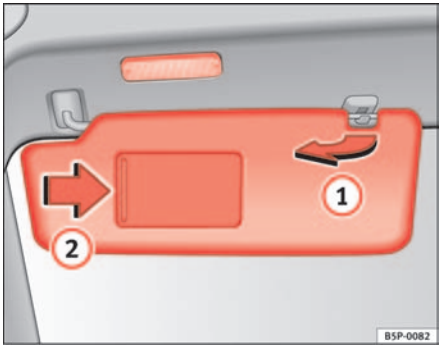

Fig. 83 Sun visor on the driver side

The sun visors for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of their mountings in the centre of the vehicle and turned towards the doors ⇒ fig. 83 (1).

The make-up mirrors in the sun visors have covers. When you open the cover (2), a lamp in the roof lights up.

The lamp* in the roof lining will go out when the vanity mirror cover is pushed back or the sun visor is pushed back up.

Note

The roof lamp will turn off about 10 minutes following the removal of the ignition key. This prevents the battery discharging. ■

Windscreen wipers

Front windscreen wipers

The windscreen wiper lever controls the windscreen wipers and the automatic wash and wipe.

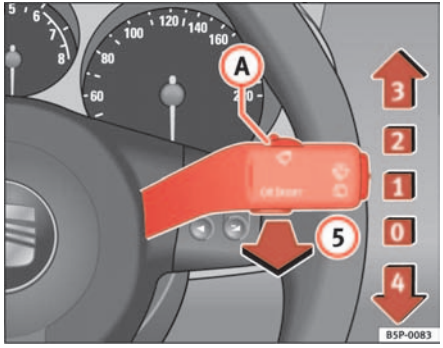

Fig. 84 Windscreen wiper and windscreen wash lever

The windscreen wiper lever ⇒ fig. 84 has the following positions:

Switching off the wipers

– Move the lever to position (0).

Intermittent wipe

– Move the lever up to position (1).

– Move the control (A) to the left or right to set the length of the intervals. Control to the left - longer wipe pause, control to the right - shorter wipe pauses. Four wiper interval stages can be set using switch (A).

Slow wipe

– Move the lever up to position (2).

Continuous wipe

– Move the lever up to position (3).

Brief wipe

– Move the lever down to position (4) to give the windscreen a *brief* wipe. The wiper will start to move faster if you keep the lever pressed down for longer than 2 seconds.

Wash and wipe automatic system

– Pull the lever towards the steering wheel - Position (5). The wash function will start immediately and the wipers will start with a slight delay. The wash and wiper systems will function at the same time at speeds of over 120 km/h.

– Return the lever back to the rest position. The wipers will keep running for approximately four seconds. ▶

Optional heated windscreen in the wiper blade* area (page

In some countries and with some versions, there is the possibility of heating the windscreen in the area of the windscreen wiper blades in order to aid de-icing in the zone.

This function is activated by turning the exterior heated rearview mirror* control forwards ⇒ page 125.

WARNING

- **Worn and dirty wiper blades obstruct visibility and reduce safety levels.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the wash / wipe system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the heating and ventilation system. The washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view of the road.**
- **Always note the corresponding warnings on ⇒ page 219, "Changing windscreen wiper blades".**

Caution

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers for the first time. If you switch on the wipers when the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen, you could damage both the wiper blades and the wiper motor.

Note

- The windscreen wipers will only work when the ignition is switched on.
- Certain versions of vehicles with alarms only permit the windscreen wiper to function when the ignition is on and the bonnet closed.
- When in use, the wipers do not go as far as the rest position. When the lever is moved to position 0, they are totally hidden.
- The next speed down will automatically be selected if speed ⇒ page 120, fig. 84 (2) or (3) is selected when the vehicle stops. The set speed will be resumed when the vehicle starts again.
- The windscreen will be wiped again after approximately five seconds once the "automatic wipe/wash system" has been operated while the vehicle is in transit (weeping function). If the windscreen wiper function is activated within three seconds of the weeping function, a new cleaning cycle is started without the previous one finishing. To recover the "weeping" function, the ignition should be turned off and restarted.
- When the "intermittent wipe function" is on, the intervals are directly proportional to the speed. This way, the higher the vehicle speed the shorter the intervals.
- The wiper will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windscreen. The wiper will stop moving if the obstacle blocks its path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper back on again.
- Before removing any objects that may be trapped in the side areas of the windscreen, always move the wiper arms to the service position (horizontal). ■

Rain sensor*

The rain sensor controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper intervals, depending on the amount of rain.

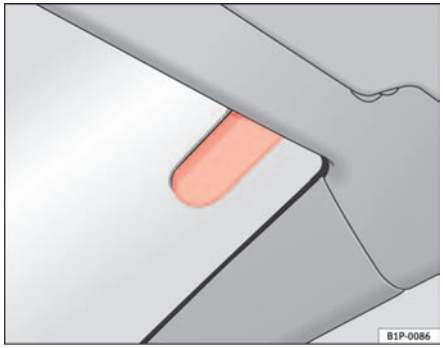

Fig. 85 Rain sensor*

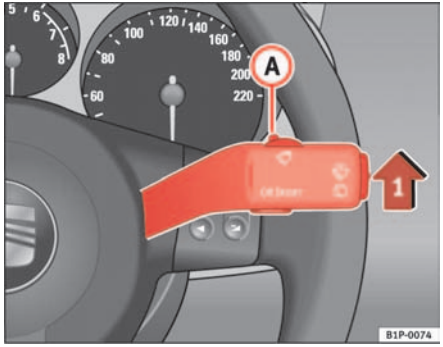

Fig. 86 Windscreen wiper lever

Switching on the rain sensor

– Move the windscreen wiper lever into position (1) ⇒ fig. 86.

– Move the control (A) to the left or right to set the sensitivity of the rain sensor. Switch to the right - high sensitivity. Switch to the right - low sensitivity.

The rain sensor is part of the interval wipe function. You will have to switch the rain sensor back on if you switch off the ignition. This is done by switching the wiper intermittent function off and back on.

Note

- Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the sensor. This may cause sensor disruption or faults. ■

Rear window wiper

The windscreen wiper lever operates the windscreen wiper and the wash and wipe system for the rear window.

Fig. 87 Window wash and wipe lever: Rear window wiper

Switching on the interval wipe

– Press the lever forwards to position (6) ⇒ fig. 87. The wiper will wipe the window approximately every 6 seconds.

Switching off the interval wipe function

– Pull the lever back from position (6) towards the steering wheel. The wiper will continue to function for a short period if you switch off whilst the wipers are in motion.

Switching on the windscreen wiper and washer system

– Press the lever fully forwards to position (7) ⇒ fig. 87. The wash function will start immediately and the wiper will start with a slight delay. The windscreen wash system will function as long as you hold the lever in this position.

– Return the lever back to the rest position. The wiper then wipes for approximately 4 seconds, and then in intervals again.

– Return the lever back to the rest position. The washer system stops and the wipers function.

WARNING

- **A worn or dirty wiper blade will obstruct visibility and reduce safety.**
- **Always note the corresponding warnings on ⇒ page 219, “Changing windscreen wiper blades”.**

Caution

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blade is not frozen to the glass before using the wiper for the first time. If you switch on the wiper when the wiper blade is frozen to the glass, this could damage both the wiper blade and the wiper motor.

Note

- The windscreen wiper will only function when the ignition is switched on and the tailgate is closed.
- In reverse gear, with the windscreen wipers switched on, the rear windscreen wiper will make one wipe. ■

Headlight washer system

The headlight washers clean the headlight lenses.

The headlight washers are activated automatically when the windscreen washer is used and the windscreen wiper lever is pulled towards the steering wheel for at least 1.5 seconds – provided the dipped headlights or main beams are switched on. Clean off stubborn dirt (insects, etc.) from the headlights at regular intervals, for instance when filling the fuel tank.

Note

- To ensure that the headlight washers work properly in winter, keep the nozzle holders in the bumper free of snow and remove any ice with a de-icer spray.
- To remove water, the windscreen wipers will be activated from time to time, the headlight wipers will be activated every three cycles. ■

Mirrors

Interior mirror

It is dangerous to drive if you cannot see clearly through the rear window.

Manual anti-dazzle function for interior mirror

In the basic mirror position, the lever at the bottom edge of the mirror should be at the front. Pull the lever to the back to select the anti-dazzle function. ■

Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror*

The automatic anti-dazzle function can be switched on and off as desired.

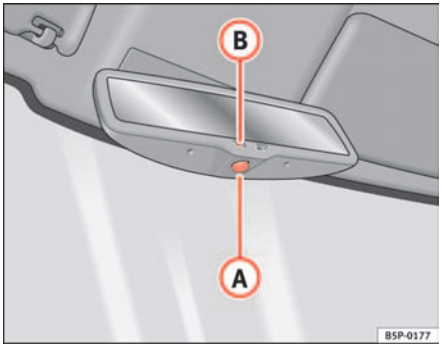

Fig. 88 Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.

Switching off anti-dazzle function

– Press button (A) ⇒ fig. 88. Warning lamp (B) goes out.

Switching on anti-dazzle function

– Press button (A) ⇒ fig. 88. Warning lamp is lit.

Anti-dazzle function

The anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on. The green indicator lamp lights up in the mirror housing.

When the anti-dazzle function is activated the interior mirror will darken **automatically** according to the amount of light it receives (for example from the headlights of a vehicle behind). The anti-dazzle function is cancelled if reverse gear is engaged. ▶

Note

- The automatic anti-dazzle function will only work properly if the sun blind* for the rear window is retracted and there are no other objects preventing light from reaching the interior mirror.
- If you have to stick any type of sticker on the windscreen, do not do so in front of the sensors. Doing so could prevent the anti-dazzle function from working well or even from working at all. ■

Exterior mirrors

The exterior mirrors can be adjusted using the rotary knob in the centre console.

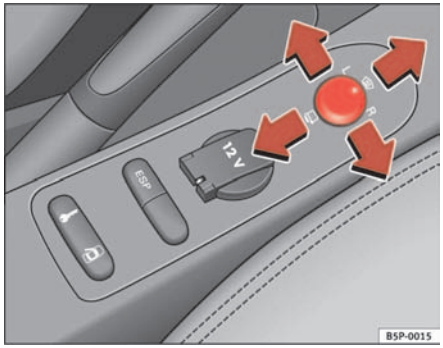

Fig. 89 Exterior mirror control

Basic setting of exterior mirrors

1. Turn knob ⇒ fig. 89 to position **L** (**left exterior mirror**).
2. Turn the rotary knob to position the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.
3. Turn knob to position **R** (**right exterior mirror**).
4. Swivel the rotary knob to position the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the car ⇒ ⚠.

Heating the exterior mirrors*

– Turn the knob forwards to the central position ⇒ fig. 89 (1) so that the heated rear view mirrors warm up and the heated windscreen* in the wiper blade rest area is activated ⇒ page 121.

Folding in exterior mirrors*

– Turn the control ⇒ fig. 89 to position to fold in the exterior mirrors. You should always fold in the exterior mirrors if you are driving through an automatic car wash. This will help prevent damage.

Folding back wing mirrors with convenience closing*

– The wing mirror folds in automatically with convenience closing (with the control or the key).

– To unfold it, open the door and press the contact

Folding exterior mirrors back out to the extended position*

– Turn the knob to another position to fold the exterior mirrors back out ⇒ ⚠.

Synchronised mirror adjustment

1. Turn the control to the position **L** (**left exterior mirror**). ▶

2. Turn the rotary knob to position the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle. The **right exterior mirror** will be adjusted at the same time (synchronised).

WARNING

- **The rear view convex or aspheric mirror increase the field of vision however the objects appear smaller and further away in the mirrors. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could make a mistake. Risk of accident.**
- **If possible, use the interior mirror to estimate distances to vehicles behind you.**
- **Make sure that you do not get your finger trapped between the mirror and the mirror base when folding back the mirrors. Risk of injury!**

For the sake of the environment

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Fuel is wasted otherwise.

Note

- If the electrical adjustment ever fails to operate, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.
- The following guideline applies to vehicles with electric exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing is moved as a result of exterior force (e.g. knocked when parking the vehicle), the mirrors must be folded in **electrically** to the final position. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
- The rear view mirrors can be adjusted separately or simultaneously, as described before. ■

Seats and stowage

The importance of correct seat adjustment

Proper seat adjustment optimises the level of protection offered by seat belts and airbags.

Your vehicle has **five** passenger places, two individual front seats and three places on the rear seat. Each seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt.

The driver seat and front passenger seat can be adjusted in many ways to suit the physical requirements of the vehicle occupants. The correct seat position is very important for:

- fast and easy operation of all controls on the instrument panel,
- relaxed posture that does not cause drowsiness,
- safe driving ⇒ page 7,
- and to ensure that the seat belts and airbag system provide maximum protection ⇒ page 19.

WARNING

- **If the driver and passengers assume improper sitting positions, they may sustain critical injuries.**
- **Never transport more people than there are seats available in the vehicle.**
- **Every occupant in the vehicle must properly fasten and wear the seat belt belonging to his or her seat. Children must be protected with an appropriate child restraint system ⇒ page 46, “Child safety”.**
- **The front seats and all headrests must always be adjusted to body size and the seat belt must always be properly adjusted to provide you and your passengers with optimum protection.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always keep your feet in the foot well when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the dash panel, out of the window or on the seat. This also applies to passengers. An incorrect sitting position exposes you to an increased risk of injury in the event of a braking manoeuvre or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain severe injuries due to an incorrect sitting position.**
- **It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dash panel. Failure to respect the minimum distance means that the airbag will not protect you. Risk of fatal injury. The distance between the driver and the steering wheel or between the front passenger and the dash panel should always be as great as possible.**
- **Adjust the driver or front passenger seat only when the vehicle is stationary. This also applies to the forwards/backwards adjustment of the rear seats. Otherwise your seat could move unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving. This could increase the risk of an accident and therefore injury. In addition, while adjusting your seat, you will assume an incorrect sitting position. Risk of fatal accidents.**
- **Special guidelines apply to installing a child seat on the front passenger seat. When installing a child seat, observe the warning note in the ⇒ page 46, “Child safety”.** ■

Headrests

Correct adjustment of headrests

Properly adjusted headrests are an important part of occupant protection and can reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.

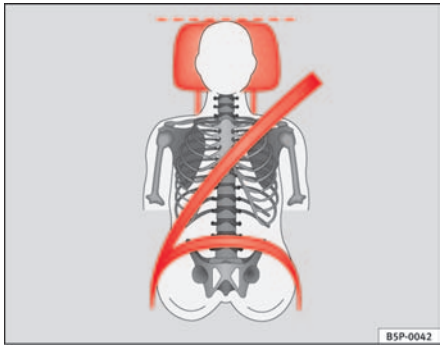

Fig. 90 Viewed from in front: Properly adjusted headrests and proper belt adjustment

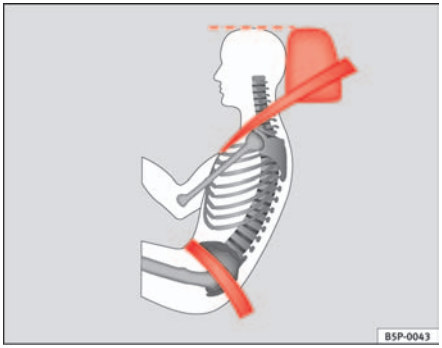

Fig. 91 Viewed from side: Properly adjusted headrests and proper belt adjustment

– Adjust the headrest so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and, at a very minimum at eye level ⇒ fig. 90 and ⇒ fig. 91.

Adjusting the headrests ⇒ page 129.

WARNING

- **Travelling with the headrests removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.**
- **Improperly adjusted headrests could lead to death in the event of a collision or accident.**
- **Incorrectly adjusted headrests also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected driving or braking manoeuvres.**
- **The headrests must always be adjusted according to the occupant's size.** ■

Removing or adjusting headrests

The headrests can be adjusted by moving them up and down.

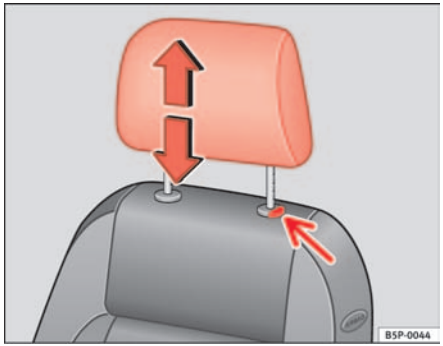

Fig. 92 Adjusting and removing the headrests

Adjusting height (front seats)

– Press the button on the side and pull upwards to the desired position.

– To lower the headrest, press the button and push headrest downwards.

– Make sure that it engages securely into position.

Adjusting height (rear seats)

– Press the button on the side and pull upwards to the desired position.

– To lower the headrest, press the button and push headrest downwards.

– Make sure that the headrest engages securely in one of its positions ⇒ page 14.

Angle adjustment (front seats)

– Press the head rest forward or back to the required position.

Removing the headrests

– Push the head rest up as far as it will go.

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 92 (arrow).

– Pull head rest out of fitting without releasing the button.

Fitting the head rests

– Insert the headrest into the guides on the rear backrest.

– Push headrest down.

– Adjust the headrest to suit body size ⇒ page 14 and ⇒ page 13.

WARNING

- **Never drive if the headrest have been removed. Risk of injury.**
- **Never drive if the headrests are in an unsuitable position, there is a risk of serious injury.**
- **After refitting the headrests, you must always adjust it properly for height to achieve optimal protection.**
- **Please observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 128, “Correct adjustment of headrests”.** ■

Front seats

Adjustment of the front seats

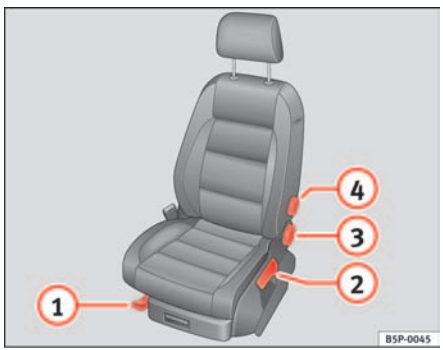

Fig. 93 Front left seat controls

The control elements in ⇒ fig. 93 are mirrored for the front right-hand seat.

(1) Adjusting the seat forwards and backwards

– Pull up the lever and move the seat forwards or backwards.

– Then release the lever (1) and move the seat further until the catch engages.

(2) Adjusting the seat height*

– Pull the lever up or push down (several times if necessary) from its home position. This adjusts the seat height in stages.

(3) Adjusting the backrest angle

– Take your weight off the backrest and turn the hand wheel.

(4) Adjusting the lumbar support*

– Take your weight off the backrest and turn the hand wheel to adjust the lumbar support.

The backrest curvature of the cushioned area is determined by the settings made in the lumbar region. This supports the natural curvature of the spine very effectively.

WARNING

- **Never adjust the driver or front passenger seat while the vehicle is in motion. While adjusting your seat, you will assume an incorrect sitting position. Risk of fatal accidents. Adjust the driver or front passenger seat only when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury to the driver and front passenger during sudden braking manoeuvres or an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted far to the rear. The maximum protection of the seat belt can be achieved only when the backrests are in an upright position and the driver and front passenger have properly adjusted their seat belts. The further the backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to improper positioning of the belt web!**
- **Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height or forwards/backwards position. Injuries can be caused if the backrest is tilted without due care and attention.** ■

Heated seats*

The front seat cushions and backrests can be heated electrically.

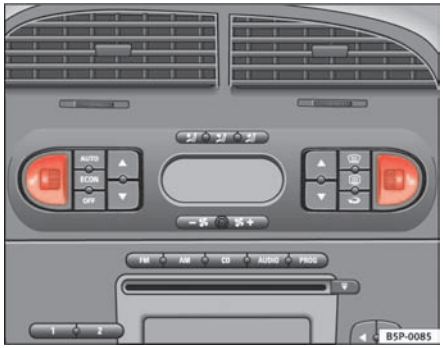

Fig. 94 Thumb wheel for the front seat heating

– Turn the appropriate thumb wheel ⇒ fig. 94 to switch on the seat heating. The seat heating is switched off in the **0** position.

The seat heating only works when the ignition is switched on. The left thumb wheel controls the left seat and the right thumb wheel the right seat.

Caution

To avoid damaging the heating elements, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion and backrest. ■

Rear seat bench

Seat adjustment

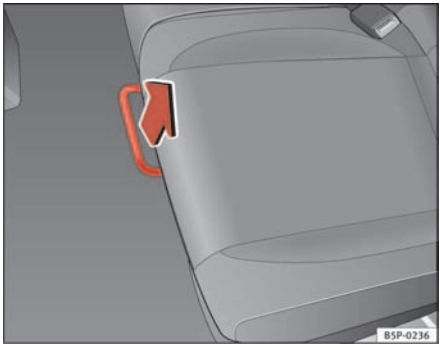

Fig. 95 Unlocking bar for the rear seat

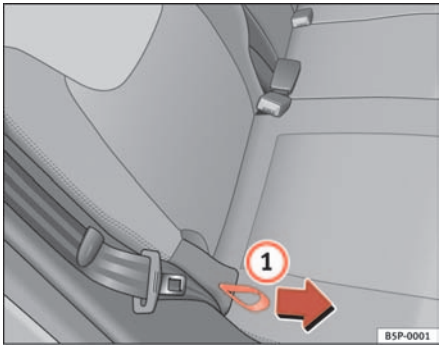

Fig. 96 Rear seat backrest angle adjustment ▶

The seats may be moved forwards or backwards independently. The movement can be 1/3 or 2/3 of the seat. There are various possible positions.

Adjusting reach

– In the seated position, unlock the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ page 131, fig. 95.

– Move the seat forwards or backwards to the desired position.

Backrest angle adjustment

– Hold the backrest at the top. Pull the loop on the side of the seat ⇒ page 131, fig. 96 (1) in the direction of the arrow and hold the loop in this position. Push the backrest to the required position and release the loop.

WARNING

- **Adjust the seat only when the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise your seat could move unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving. This could increase the risk of an accident and therefore injury.**
- **Do not push the seatbacks down until the seat is moved, this is to avoid damage to the centre console.**
- **Ensure that the seat, once moved, is fixed in position.**

Note

- In order to maintain the maximum luggage compartment space, put the seatbacks in normal position, without moving.
- In order to maintain the maximum space without putting the seatbacks down, move the seats forward to the desired position. ■

Folding the seat backrests down

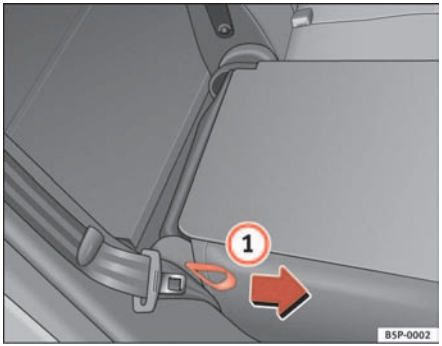

Fig. 97 Folding or opening the rear seat backrests

– Pull the loop on the side of the seat ⇒ fig. 97 (1)

In this position the back rest is locked. This is the reason why the loop located on the side of the seat must be pulled in the direction of the arrow to open the backrest.

WARNING

- **You should check that the backrest has engaged properly in position after the loop is released.**
- **The locking system loops on the seats may not, for safety reasons, be used to secure any items.** ■

Folding the rear seat backrests down

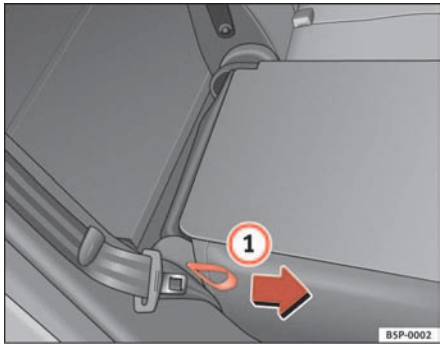

Fig. 98 Folding or opening the front seat backrests

– Pull the loop on the side of the seat ⇒ fig. 98 (1) in the direction of the arrow and lift the seat backrest into position.

WARNING

- **You should check that the backrest has engaged properly in position after the loop is released.**
- **The locking system loops on the seats may not, for safety reasons, be used to secure any items.**
- **After locking the seat backrest into position ensure that the seat belts protrude from the seat.** ■

Stowage compartments

Stowage compartment on the front passenger side

Fig. 99 Passenger side: Stowage compartment

The compartment can be opened by pulling the lever ⇒ fig. 99.

WARNING

Always keep the stowage compartment cover closed while the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident. ■

Centre arm rest at front with stowage area

There is a stowage area in the armrest.

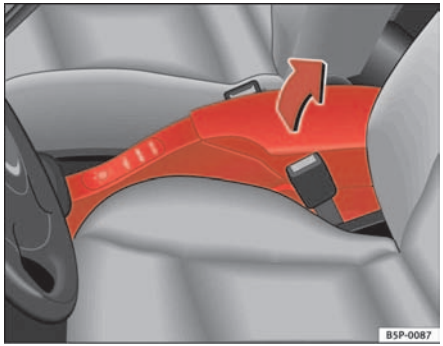

Fig. 100 Front armrest with stowage area

- To open the stowage area, lift the armrest up in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 100 and then lift the cover.
- To access the CD loader* or the lower stowage area, pull on the armrest cover without pressing on the button.
- To close the stowage area, push the armrest down.

WARNING

Always keep the stowage area closed while the vehicle is in motion to reduce the risk of injury from the armrest during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident.

Note

The CD changer is located in this compartment. ■

Stowage areas under the front seats

There is a stowage locker with a cover under each front seat.

Fig. 101 Stowage area under the front seats

The drawer* ⇒ fig. 101 (A) is opened by pushing the button and putting the cover back.

There are two open positions of 15 and 60 degrees depending on the pressure applied to the cover. In the 60 degree position, the cover will collapse if too much pressure is applied.

To close the drawer, press the cover until it locks into position. ▶

WARNING

- **The drawers will hold a maximum weight of 1.5 kg.**
- **Do not drive with the drawer cover open. There is an injury risk for passengers if the contents are released in case of sudden braking or an accident.** ■

Folding table*

Folding tables are fitted to the rear of the front seat backrests.

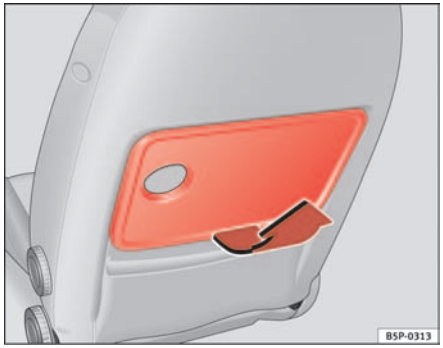

Fig. 102 Folding table for the front left seat

– To open the table, open it up in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 102.

WARNING

- **The folding table may not be folded down whilst the vehicle is in motion and anyone is seated on the second row of seats. There is a risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre! The table must therefore be closed and properly secured whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never place hot drinks in the drink holders. During normal or sudden driving manoeuvres, sudden braking or an accident, the hot drink could be spilled with a danger of scalding.**

Caution

When driving, do not leave open containers in the drinks holders. The drink might be spilt on braking, for example, and could damage the vehicle. ■

Stowage in the luggage compartment*

There is a variable stowage area in the luggage compartment floor.*

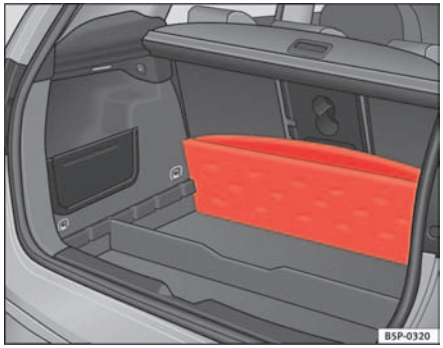

Fig. 103 Variable stowage area in the luggage compartment floor

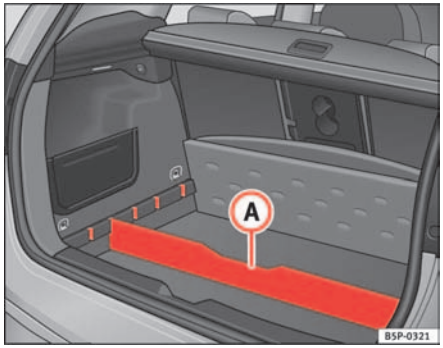

Fig. 104 Variable stowage area in the luggage compartment floor

– Lift the luggage compartment floor and fold it back all the way ⇒ fig. 103.

– Fit the separator (A) ⇒ fig. 104, into the side grooves depending on the size of the objects to be transported. The onboard tool kit and the spare wheel are located underneath the luggage compartment.

– Secure luggage in the luggage compartment with suitable straps on the fastening rings.

Note

- The folding table is designed for a maximum load of 50 kg. For heavier loads fold up the table and remove.
- Do not exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle ⇒ page 270. ■

Luggage compartment retaining net*

There is a retaining net in the luggage compartment for securing objects.

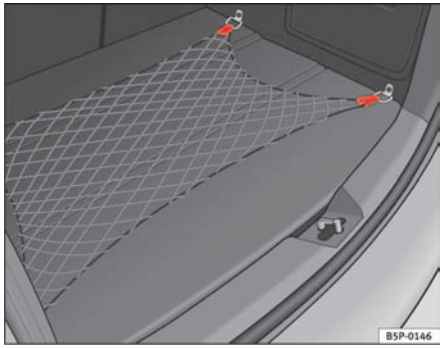

Fig. 105 Retaining net

– Use the fastening rings located on the side of the luggage compartment to attach the retaining net ⇒ fig. 105.

Note

- The folding table is designed for a maximum load of 50 kg. For heavier loads fold up the table and remove.
- Do not exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle ⇒ page 270. ■

Other stowage areas

Other stowage areas can be found:

- in the centre console,
- in the door trims (front and rear),
- in the side trims of the luggage compartment,
- in the spare wheel recess in the luggage compartment (only on vehicles with an optional anti-puncture kit*.

The clothes hooks are located on the rear roof handles.

WARNING

- **Do not store loose objects on the dashboard. These objects could be flung through the passenger compartment when the vehicle is moving (e.g. while accelerating, braking or cornering) and distract the driver. Risk of accident.**
- **Ensure that no objects can fall from the centre console or other stowage areas onto the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre, you will not be able to use the brake, clutch or accelerator. Risk of accident.**
- **Clothing hung on the coat hooks must not restrict the driver's view. Risk of accident. The coat hooks are intended only for use with light articles of clothing. Do not leave any hard, sharp or heavy objects in hanging articles of clothing. During sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents, especially those involving airbag deployment, these objects could injure the vehicle occupants.** ■

Drinks holders at the front

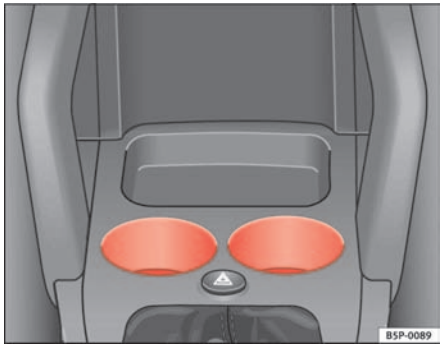

Fig. 106 Front drinks holders

In the centre console, in front of the gear lever, there are two drinks holders ⇒ fig. 106.

WARNING

- **Never place hot drinks in the drinks holders. During normal or sudden driving manoeuvres, sudden braking or an accident, the hot drink could be spilled. Danger of scalding.**
- **Never use rigid materials (for example, glass or ceramic), these could cause injury in the case of an accident.** ■

Rear drinks holder* / Armrest*

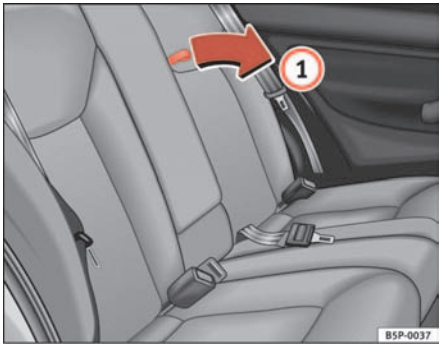

Fig. 107 Opening the rear drinks holders

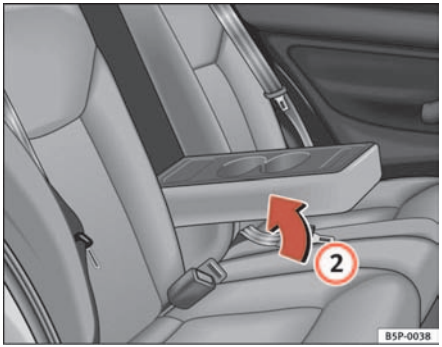

Fig. 108 Rear armrest/drinks holder ▶

Opening and closing the armrest* / drinks holder*

– To open, pull the loop in the direction of the arrow ⇒ page 138, fig. 107 (1).

– To close, lift the Drinks holder* / armrest* in the direction of the arrow ⇒ page 138, fig. 108 (2).

WARNING

Ensure that the load in the luggage compartment is correctly secured with the retainer net when travelling with the armrest down ⇒ page 137. ■

Multi-purpose* mobile stowage compartment - Fitting and removal

This stowage compartment may only be placed in the central area of the rear seat

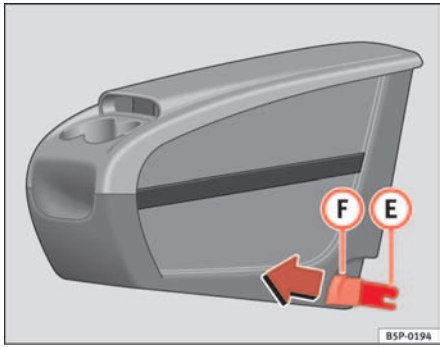

Fig. 109 Mobile stowage compartment Installation

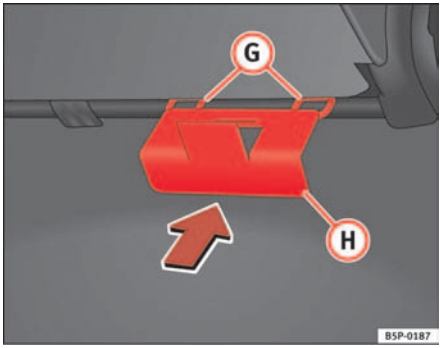

Fig. 110 Mobile stowage compartment mounting plate

Fitting mobile stowage compartment

– Fold down the small section of the rear seat back rest, in order to access the large section of the back rest.

– Fit the mobile stowage compartment mounting plate (H) ⇒ fig. 110 from the inside of the vehicle, through the rear section of the seat. It should be fitted between the back rest and the seat, in the central seat area.

– Push the plate until it clips the cushion frame. The rings of the mobile stowage compartment mounting plate appear at the front of the seat.

– If it is difficult to make the plate clip, tilt the rear back rest of the large section forwards slightly and then lean the back rest backwards to make the fitting of the mobile stowage compartment onto the mounting plate easier. ▶

– Place the mobile stowage compartment onto the foam of the central seat.

– Set both mounting pieces together (E) ⇒ page 139, fig. 109, with both mounting rings (G) ⇒ page 139, fig. 110 and press hard until both the clips completely connect with the rings.

Removing mobile stowage compartment

– Pull each of the buttons ⇒ page 139, fig. 109 (F) on the clips (red buttons) forwards, until they snap out of place.

– Fold the larger seat down and remove the mobile stowage compartment mounting plate. ■

Multi-purpose* mobile stowage compartment - General information

This stowage compartment may only be placed in the central area of the rear seat

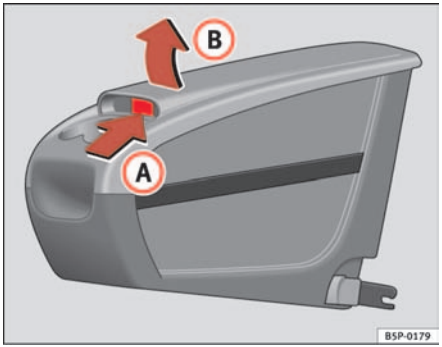

Fig. 111 Mobile stowage compartment Opening

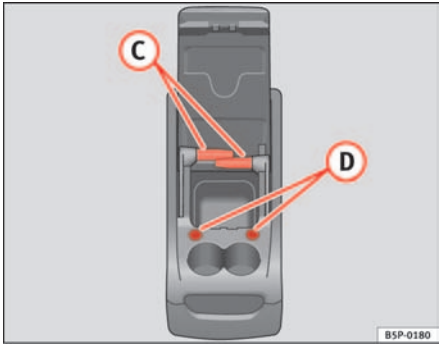

Fig. 112 Mobile stowage compartment Uses

Opening

– Lift the cover (B), in area (A) ⇒ page 140, fig. 111.

Closing

– Push the cover down, until it clips into place.

Uses of the mobile stowage compartment

- The front open glove box may be used to store small objects that will not damage passengers in the event that the objects are flung around the interior of the vehicle.
- The drinks holders are used for holding drink cans or cups.
- The elastic belt on the side may be used for keeping papers and magazines.
- The tables may be used as a support for writing.

To use the table (C) ⇒ page 140, fig. 112, it must be removed from its compartment on the side of the mobile stowage compartment and fitted into compartment (D) ⇒ page 140, fig. 112 on the front section of the mobile stowage compartment.

The table in the right-hand compartment is fitted in the left-hand compartment of the front of the mobile stowage compartment and the table in the left-hand compartment is fitted in the right-hand compartment.

The tables have two positions for use and cannot be interchanged.

WARNING

- **The mobile stowage compartment supports a maximum load of 5 kg. Do not overload.**
- **Do not drive when the cover of the mobile stowage compartment is open.**
- **Do not drive when the tables are set up for use.**

WARNING (continued)

- **When the vehicle is moving, keep the tables stored inside the mobile stowage compartment with the cover closed, and likewise when they are not in use**
- **Never place hot drinks in the drink holders. The drink may spill and cause burns when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Do not leave cans in the drinks holder when the vehicle is in motion, there is a danger that the can may be flung around the vehicle and cause injury.**
- **Make sure that the mounting plate is correctly clipped onto the cushion frame.**
- **When the plate is not in use, store inside the stowage compartment.**
- **When the mobile stowage compartment is not in use, it should always be fastened by the retaining net in the luggage compartment.**

Note

- Check that the mobile stowage compartment is correctly fitted, pulling it forwards by the front glove box and checking that both safety clips are correctly clipped onto the rings. ■

Ashtrays*, cigarette lighter* and electrical sockets

Ashtray*

Fig. 113 Ashtray located in the front drinks holder

Opening and closing the ashtray

– To open the ashtray, lift the cover ⇒ fig. 113.

– To close, lower the cover.

Emptying the ashtray

– Extract the ashtray and empty.

WARNING

Never put paper in the ashtray. Hot ash could ignite the paper in the ashtray. ■

Cigarette lighter*

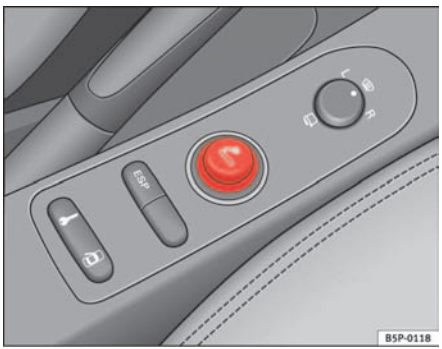

Fig. 114 The cigarette lighter is located in the electric socket on the front of the centre console

– Press on the cigarette lighter ⇒ fig. 114 to activate it ⇒ ⚠.

– Wait for the lighter to pop out slightly.

– Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette on the glowing coil.

WARNING

- **Improper use of the cigarette lighter can lead to serious injuries or start a fire.**
- **Take care when using the cigarette lighter. Carelessness or negligence when using the cigarette lighter can cause burns, risk of injury.**
- **The cigarette lighter also works when the ignition is off and when the ignition key is removed. To avoid the risk of fire, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.** ■

Electrical sockets

Electrical equipment can be connected to any of the 12 volt sockets.

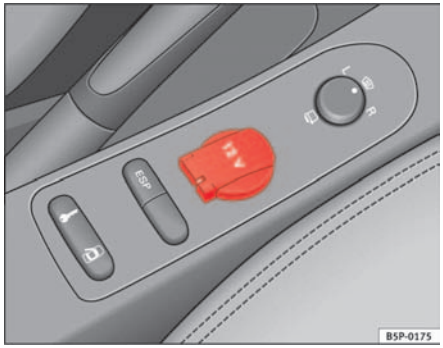

Fig. 115 Socket in the front centre console

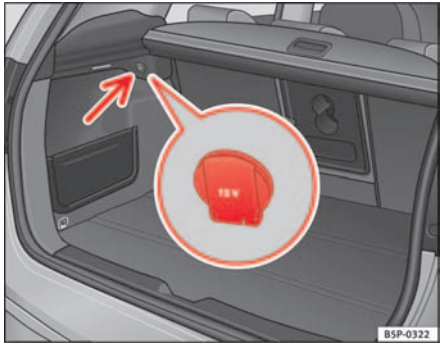

Fig. 116 Luggage compartment socket

Electrical accessories may be connected to the 12 volt socket in the front centre console ⇒ fig. 115 or to that of the luggage compartment* ⇒ fig. 116. The appliances connected to each socket must not exceed a power rating of 120 Watt.

WARNING

The electrical sockets and any appliances connected to them are also functional with the ignition switched off and the key removed. Improper use of the sockets or electrical accessories can lead to serious injuries or cause a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle.

Note

- Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off will drain the battery.
- Before using any electrical accessories, see the instructions on ⇒ page 201. ■

Auxiliary audio connection (AUX-IN)

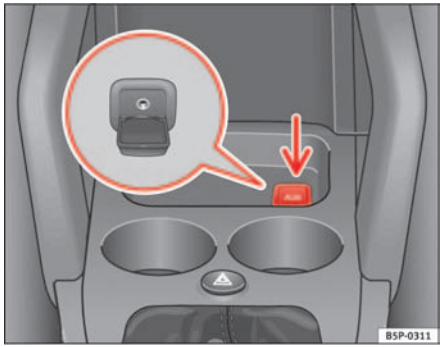

Fig. 117 Auxiliary audio connection

– Lift the AUX. cover ⇒ fig. 117.

– Insert the pin fully (See the radio manual). ■

Conector for the Apple* iPod®

The iPod connector® is in the central armrest compartment

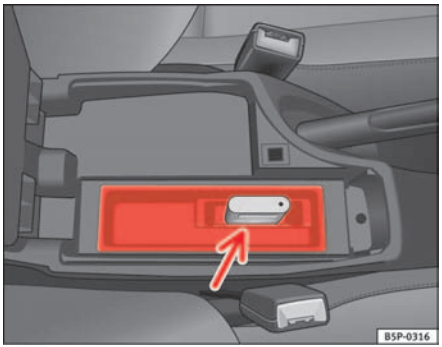

Fig. 118 iPod connection in the central armrest

Consult the radio manual for information on how this equipment works. ■

USB* Connection

In the central armrest there is a USB port.

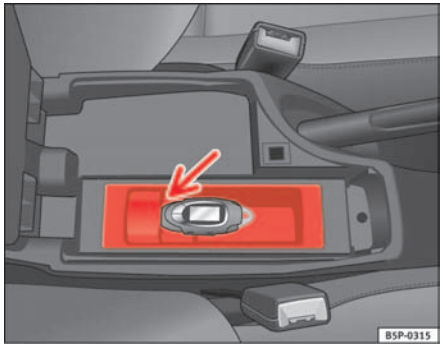

Fig. 119 USB* connection in the central armrest

Consult the radio manual for information on how this equipment works. ■

First-aid kit, warning triangle, fire extinguisher

Warning triangle* and first-aid kit*

The warning triangle and the first-aid kit can be stored in the stowage compartment located in the luggage compartment floor, underneath the mat.

Note

- Neither the warning triangle nor the first-aid kit are part of the vehicle's standard equipment.
- The first-aid kit must comply with legal requirements.
- Observe the expiry date of the contents of the first-aid kit. You should purchase a new first-aid kit as soon as possible after the shelf-life date of the first-aid kit has expired.
- Before acquiring accessories and emergency equipment see the instructions on ⇒ page 201. ■

Fire extinguisher*

The fire extinguisher* is attached to the luggage compartment carpet by velcro.

Note

- The fire extinguisher is **not** part of the vehicle's standard equipment.
- The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.
- Ensure that the fire extinguisher is fully functional. The fire extinguisher should, therefore, be checked regularly. The sticker on the fire extinguisher will inform you of the next date for checking.
- Before acquiring accessories and emergency equipment see the instructions on ⇒ page 201. ■

Luggage compartment

Stowing luggage

All luggage must be securely stowed.

Please observe the following points to ensure the vehicle handles well at all times:

– Distribute the load as evenly as possible.

– Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.

– Secure luggage in the luggage compartment with suitable straps on the fastening rings.

WARNING

- **Loose luggage and other loose items in the vehicle can cause serious injuries.**
- **Loose objects in the luggage compartment can suddenly move and change the way the vehicle handles.**
- **During sudden manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects in the passenger compartment can be flung forward, injuring vehicle occupants.**
- **Always store objects in the luggage compartment and secure with suitable straps. This is especially important for heavy objects.**
- **When you transport heavy objects, always keep in mind that a change in the centre of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling.**
- **Please observe information on safe driving ⇒ page 7, “Safe driving”.**

Caution

Hard objects on the shelf could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

Note

The ventilation slots in front of the rear side windows must not be covered as this would prevent stale air being extracted from the vehicle. ■

Sliding stowage compartment tray

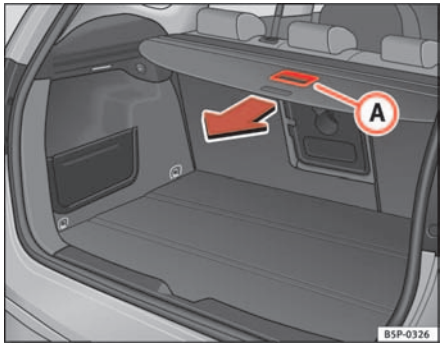

Fig. 120 Operating the stowage compartment tray

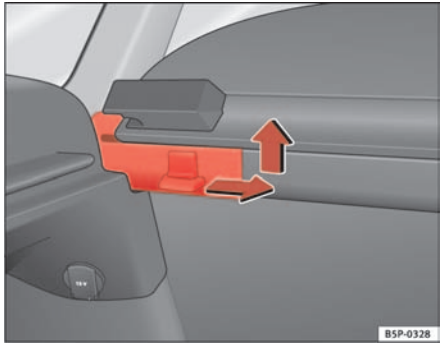

Fig. 121 Removing the stowage compartment tray

Operating the stowage compartment tray

– Pull the tray backwards using the lever (A) until you hear a “click” ⇒ fig. 120.

– Press the area marked “PRESS” and the tray automatically slides in.

To remove the storage compartment

– Push the side pin in the direction of the arrow, lift the tray and remove it ⇒ fig. 121.

– Installation is done in the reverse order.

WARNING

Do not place heavy or hard objects on the luggage compartment tray, this will endanger the vehicle occupants in case of sudden braking.

Note

- Ensure that, when placing items of clothing on the luggage compartment tray, rear visibility is not reduced. ■

Roof carrier*

Please observe the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

- For safety reasons, only luggage racks and accessories approved by SEAT should be used.

- You must adhere strictly to the installation instructions that come with the racks. Be especially careful when positioning the front and back luggage racks in the space provided in the roof racks, while making sure to maintain ▶

them in the direction of travel position as indicated in the installation manual. Not following these instructions may lead to marks on the roof racks.

- Distribute the load evenly. A maximum load of 40 kg only is permitted for each roof carrier system support bar, the load must be distributed evenly over the entire length. However, the maximum load permitted for the entire roof (including the support system) of 75 kg must not be exceeded nor should the total weight of the vehicle be exceeded. See the chapter on “Technical Data”.
- When transporting heavy or large objects on the roof, any change in the normal vehicle behaviour due to a change in the centre of gravity or an increased wind resistance must be taken into account. For this reason, a suitable speed and driving style must be used.
- For those vehicles fitted with a sunroof*, ensure that it does not interfere with the load on the roof carrier system when opened. ■

Air conditioning

Heating

Operating instructions

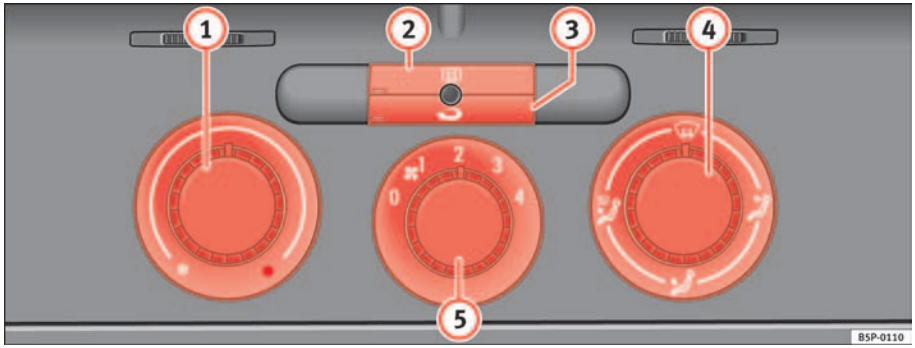

Fig. 122 On the dash panel: Heater controls

– Using the controls ⇒ fig. 122 (1) and (4) and the control (5) you can set the temperature, air distribution and the turbine speed.

– To switch a function on or off, press the appropriate button (2) or (3). When the function is activated, the display window in the lower left of the button is lit.

Temperature

With the regulator (1) the heating level is determined. The required temperature inside the vehicle cannot be lower than the ambient temperature.

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

Rear window heating

This function (2) will be switched off automatically approximately *20 minutes* after being switched on. It can also be switched off beforehand by pushing the button

Air recirculation mode

Air recirculation mode (3) prevents strong odours in the outside air from entering the vehicle interior, for example when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic ⇒ ⚠.

With low ambient temperatures, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the heating system by heating the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the ambient air.

Air distribution

Control (4) for setting the flow of air in the required direction.

– Air distribution towards the windscreen. Air recirculation is, for safety reasons, **not** possible in this position.

– Air distribution to the upper body.

– Air distribution to foot well

– Air distribution to the windscreen and the foot well.

Blower

The airflow can be set at four speeds with the control (5). The airflow should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly.

WARNING

- **For road safety all windows must be clear of ice, snow, and condensation. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the anti-fog/defrost functions for the windows.**
- **In air recirculation mode, no ambient air enters the vehicle interior. The windows can quickly fog over if the heating is switched off. Therefore, you should never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for longer periods, as this increases the risk of an accident.**

Note

Please observe the general notes ⇒ page 158. ■

Climatic*

Control switches

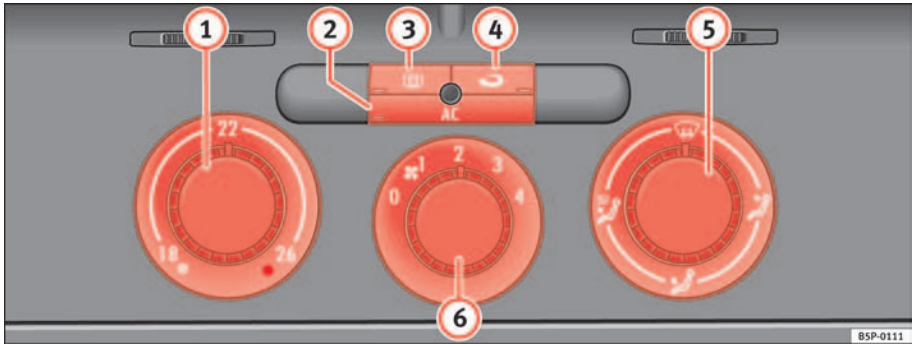

Fig. 123 On the dash panel: Climatic controls

The climatic or semi-automatic air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the turbine is switched on.

– Using the controls ⇒ fig. 123 (1) and (5) and the control (6) you can set the temperature, air distribution and the airflow.

– To switch a function on or off, press the appropriate button (2), (3) or (4). When the function is activated, the display window in the lower corner of the button is lit.

(1) Temperature selector ⇒ page 152
(2) Button AC – Heating, ventilation and air-conditioning system on/off ⇒ page 152
(3) Button – Rear window heating. The heating will be switched off automatically approximately *20 minutes* after switching on. It can also be switched off beforehand by pushing the button.
(4) Button – Air recirculation mode ⇒ page 153
(5) Air distribution control ⇒ page 152
(6) Blower switch. There are four speed settings for the airflow. The airflow should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly.

WARNING

For road safety all windows must be clear of ice, snow, and condensation. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the anti-fog/defrost functions for the windows.

Note

Please observe the general notes ⇒ page 158. ■

Heating and cooling the interior

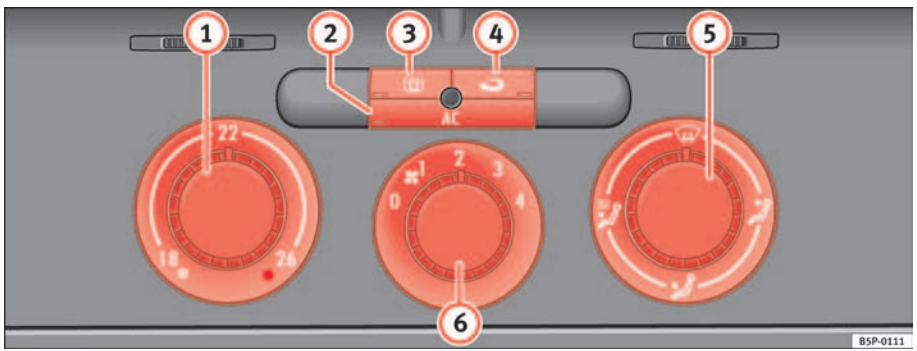

Fig. 124 On the dash panel: Climatic controls

Heating of the vehicle interior

– Turn the temperature selector ⇒ fig. 124 (1) clockwise to select the required temperature.

– Turn the blower switch to one of the settings 1-4.

– Use the air distribution control to guide the flow of air in the required direction: (to the windscreen), (to the upper body), (to the foot well) and (to the windscreen and to the foot well).

Cooling the passenger compartment

– Switch on the air conditioner using the button ⇒ page 151, fig. 123 AC.

– Turn the temperature selector anti-clockwise until the desired cooling output is reached.

– Turn the blower switch to one of the settings 1-4. ▶

– Use the air distribution control to guide the flow of air in the required direction: (to the windscreen), (to the upper body), (to the foot well) and (to the windscreen and to the foot well).

Heating system

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

Air conditioner

When the air conditioning system is switched on, not only the temperature, but also the air humidity in the vehicle interior is reduced. This improves comfort for the vehicle occupants and prevents misting of the windows when the ambient air humidity is high.

If the air conditioning system cannot be switched on this may be caused by the following reasons:

- The engine may not be running.
- The blower is switched off.
- The ambient air temperature is lower than +3°C.
- The air conditioning system compressor has been temporarily switched off because the engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The air conditioner fuse is faulty.
- Another fault in the vehicle. Have the air conditioner checked by a qualified workshop. ■

Air recirculation mode

Air recirculation mode prevents fumes or unpleasant smells from entering the vehicle.

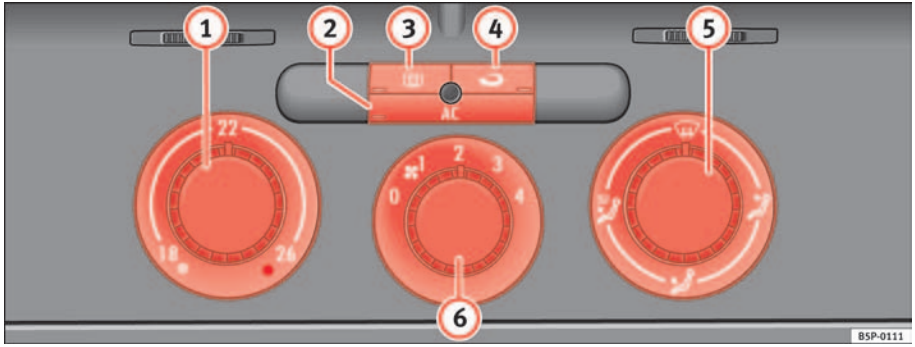

Fig. 125 On the dash panel: Climatic controls

Air recirculation mode ⇒ page 153, fig. 125 prevents strong odours in the outside air from entering the vehicle interior, for example when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic.

With low ambient temperatures, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the heating system by heating the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the ambient air.

With high ambient temperatures, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the air conditioning system by cooling the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the ambient air.

For reasons of safety, air recirculation is **not** possible when the control for air distribution is set to the windscreen setting .

WARNING

In air recirculation mode, no ambient air enters the vehicle interior. If the air conditioning system is switched off, the windows can quickly mist over. Therefore, you should never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for longer periods, as this increases the risk of an accident. ■

2C-Climatronic*

Control switches

The controls allow separate adjustment of air conditioning settings for the left and right.

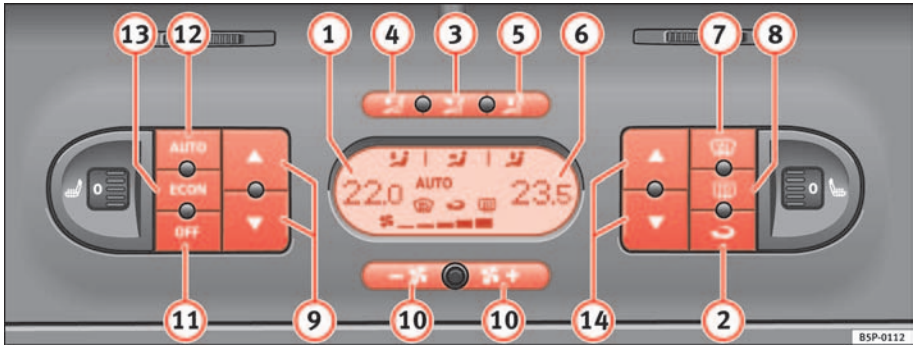

Fig. 126 On the dash panel: 2C Climatronic controls

The air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the blower is switched on.

– Press the temperature control buttons ⇒ page 154, fig. 126 (9) or (14) in order to adjust the temperature on the left hand side or the right hand side respectively.

– The functions will be switched on when the buttons are pressed. When these functions are activated, they are indicated in the display. Also, the de-icing and rear heated window functions will turn on along with their corresponding yellow symbol. Press the button again to switch off the function.

The temperature can be adjusted separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior.

(1) Display of the selected interior temperature for the left side.
(2) Button – Manual air recirculation mode
(3) Button – Central air distribution
(4) Button – Downward air distribution
(5) Button – Upward air distribution
(6) Display of the selected interior temperature for the right side.
(7) Button – defrost function for the windscreen. The air drawn in from outside the vehicle is directed at the windscreen. The air recirculation mode, if switched on, will be switched off as soon as the defrost function is switched on. At temperatures over 3°C, the air conditioning system will be switched on automatically and the blower speed will be increased by one level in order to dry the air. The button lights up yellow and the symbol appears in the display.
(8) Button – Rear window heating. The heating will be switched off automatically approximately *20 minutes* after switching on. However, it may be turned off by pushing the button. The button lights up yellow and the symbol appears in the display.
(9) Temperature selector for the left side ⇒ page 155
(10) Blower control ⇒ page 156
(11) Button OFF – Switches the 2C-Climatronic on and off ⇒ page 156
(12) Button AUTO – Automatic temperature, ventilation and air distribution control ⇒ page 155
(13) Button ECON – Switches heating, ventilation and air-conditioning system off
(14) Temperature selector for the right side ⇒ page 155

WARNING

For road safety all windows must be clear of ice, snow, and condensation. This is essential to ensure good visibility. Please familiarise yourself with the correct operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the anti-fog/defrost functions for the windows.

Note

Please observe the general notes ⇒ page 158. ■

Automatic mode

In automatic mode air temperature, airflow and distribution are automatically regulated so that a specified temperature is attained as quickly as possible and then maintained.

The temperature can be adjusted separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior.

Switching on automatic mode

– Press the button AUTO ⇒ page 154, fig. 126. “AUTO” is shown on the display. ▶

– Press the temperature selectors to set the desired temperatures for the left and right sides of the interior. We recommend 22°C (72°F).

A comfortable interior climate is quickly reached when a temperature of +22°C (72°F) is set in automatic mode. It can be changed as necessary to suit individual preferences or particular circumstances. It is possible to select interior temperatures from +16°C (61°F) to +29.5°C (86F). These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the ambient conditions.

Climatronic maintains a constant temperature level. The temperature of the air supplied to the interior, the blower speed and the air distribution are regulated automatically. The system also allows for the effect of strong sunlight, so there is no need for manual adjustment. Therefore, **automatic mode** provides the best comfort for the vehicle occupants in virtually all conditions throughout the year.

Automatic mode is switched off whenever an adjustment is made using the buttons for the air distribution, airflow or ECON. The temperature will continue to be regulated within the parameters manually selected by the user. ■

Manual mode

In manual mode you can adjust the air temperature, airflow and distribution as required.

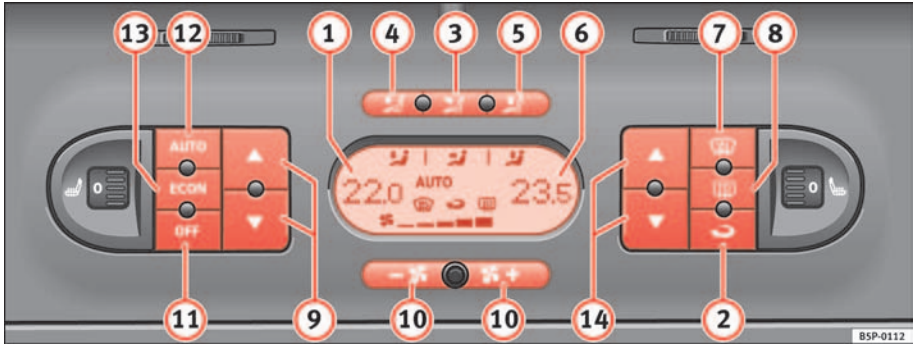

Fig. 127 On the dash panel: 2C Climatronic controls

Switching on manual mode

– To enter manual mode, press one of the buttons ⇒ fig. 127 (3) to (5), ECON or press the airflow control (10). The symbol AUTO will disappear from the display. ▶

Temperature

There are separate temperature selectors for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior. The selected temperature is displayed above the selector. It is possible to select interior temperatures from +16°C (61°F) to +29.5°C (86°F). These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the ambient conditions.

If a temperature below 16°C (61°F) is selected, the display switches to **LO**. In this setting the system runs at maximum cooling output and the temperature is not regulated.

If a temperature above 29.5°C (86°F) is selected the display switches to **HI**. In this setting the system runs at maximum heating output and the temperature is not regulated.

Blower

The airflow may be adjusted freely using the control (10). Always have the blower running at a low setting to ensure a constant flow of fresh air into the vehicle. Pushing the button to the minimum -1, turns the Climatronic off.

Air distribution

The air distribution is adjusted using the buttons , and . It is also possible to open and close some of the air vents separately.

Switching the air conditioning system on and off

Pressing the button ECON switches off the air conditioning system to save fuel. The temperature continues to be regulated. The set temperature can then only be reached if it is higher than the ambient temperature. ■

Air recirculation mode

Air recirculation mode prevents fumes or unpleasant smells from entering the vehicle.

– Press the button ⇒ page 156, fig. 127 (2) to switch air recirculation mode on or off. It is switched on if the following symbol appears in the display .

Air recirculation mode prevents strong odours in the ambient air from entering the vehicle interior, for example when passing through a tunnel or in queuing traffic.

With low ambient temperatures, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the heating system by heating the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the ambient air.

With high ambient temperatures, the air recirculation increases the effectiveness of the air conditioning system by cooling the air inside the passenger compartment rather than the ambient air.

For reasons of safety, air recirculation is **not** possible when the control for air distribution is set to the windscreen setting .

WARNING

In air recirculation mode, no ambient air enters the vehicle interior. If the air conditioning system is switched off, the windows can quickly mist over. Therefore, you should never leave the air recirculation mode switched on for longer periods, as this increases the risk of an accident. ■

General notes

The pollen filter

The pollution filter (a combined particulate filter and active carbon filter) serves as a barrier against impurities in the outside air, including dust and pollen.

For the air conditioning system to work with maximum efficiency, the pollen filter must be replaced at the intervals specified in the Service Schedule.

If the filter loses efficiency prematurely due to use in areas with very high levels of air pollution, the pollen filter must be changed more frequently than stated in the Service Schedule.

Caution

- If you suspect that the air conditioner is damaged, switch off the air conditioner with button ECON to prevent further damage and have it checked by a qualified workshop.
- Repairs to the air conditioning system require specialist knowledge and special tools. Therefore, we recommend that you take the vehicle to a qualified workshop should problems occur.

Note

- If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle, this is completely normal and there is no need to suspect a leak.
- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure heating and cooling is not impaired, and to prevent the windows misting over.
- The air from the vents flows through the passenger compartment and is extracted by slots designed for this purpose. Do not cover these slots with articles of clothing or other objects.
- The air conditioning system operates most effectively with the windows and the sliding/tilting roof* closed. However, if the sun has heated up the vehicle, the air inside can be cooled more quickly by opening the windows for a short period.
- Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the air conditioning system leaves a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odour.
- The air conditioning should be turned on at least once a month, to lubricate the system gaskets and prevent leaks. If a decrease in the cooling capacity is detected, an Authorised Service Centre should be consulted to check the system. ■

Driving

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be freely adjusted to suit the driver.

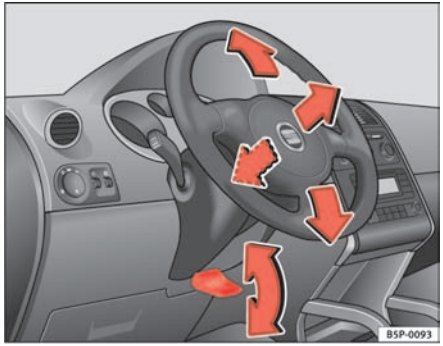

Fig. 128 Adjusting the steering wheel position

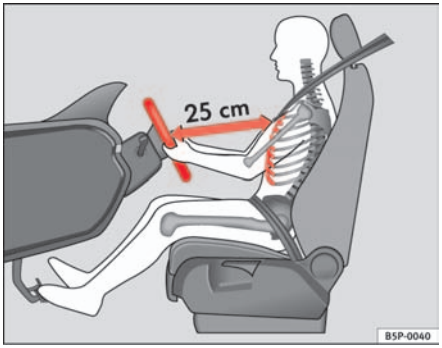

Fig. 129 Proper sitting position for driver

– Adjust the driver seat to the correct position.

– Push the lever under the steering column ⇒ fig. 128 down ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the steering wheel in this way until the correct position is set ⇒ fig. 129.

– Then push the lever up again firmly ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect use of the steering column adjustment function and an incorrect seating position can result in serious injury.**
- **To avoid accidents, the steering column should be adjusted only when the vehicle is stationary. Risk of accident.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Adjust the driver seat or steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and your chest ⇒ page 159, fig. 129. If you fail to observe the minimum distance, the airbag will not protect you. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the minimum distance of 25 cm, contact an Authorised Service Centre. The Authorised Service Centre will help you decide if special specific modifications are necessary.**
- **If you adjust the steering wheel so that it points towards your face, the driver airbag will not protect you properly in the event of an accident. Make sure that the steering wheel points towards your chest.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions. Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel, or on the inside of the rim). In such cases, you could receive severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.** ■

Safety

Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)*

ESP helps make driving safer in certain situations.

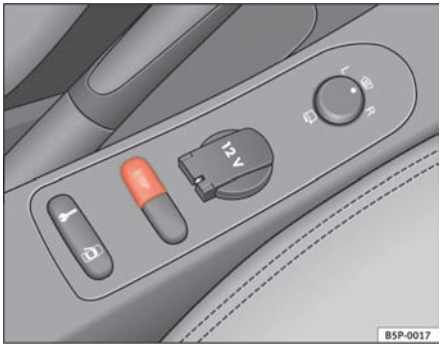

Fig. 130 Detail of the centre console: ESP button

The Electronic Stabilisation Program (ESP) contains the electronic differential lock (EDL) and the traction control system (TCS). The ESP function works in conjunction with the ABS. Both warning lamps will light up if the ESP or ABS systems are faulty.

The ESP is started automatically when the engine is started.

In specific circumstances where you require less traction, you can switch off the ESP by pressing button ⇒ fig. 130 (ESP).

For example:

- when driving with snow chains,
- when driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces,

- when rocking the vehicle backwards and forwards to free it from mud, for example.

You should press the button to switch the ESP back on when you no longer need wheel spin.

The TCS and EDL are also switched off if the ESP is switched off. That is to say, these systems are not available while ESP is not activated.

When does the (ESP) button light up or flash?

- It lights up when the ignition is switched on and should go out again after about 2 seconds.
- It will start flashing to indicate that ESP is counteracting an unstable driving condition.
- It will light up continuously if there is a malfunction in the ESP.
- It will light up continuously if the ESP is switched off.

WARNING

- **The electronic stabilisation program (ESP) cannot defy the laws of physics. This should be kept in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by ESP tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**
- **Please refer to the corresponding warning notes on ESP in ⇒ page 179, "Intelligent technology".** ■

Ignition lock

Position of the ignition key

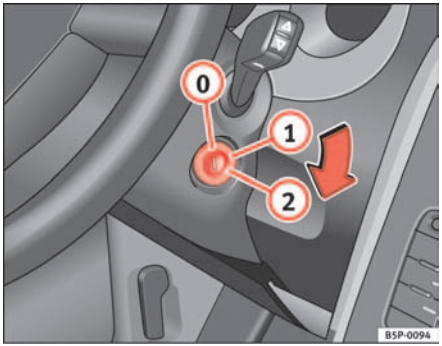

Fig. 131 Ignition key positions

Ignition switched off, steering lock (0)

In the position ⇒ fig. 131 the ignition and the engine are OFF and the steering may be locked.

For the **Steering lock** to operate without the ignition key, turn the steering wheel until it locks with an audible sound. You should always lock the steering wheel when you leave your vehicle. This will help prevent theft of the vehicle ⇒ ⚠ .

Switching on the ignition or glow plug system (1)

Turn the ignition key to this position and let go of the key. If the key cannot be turned or is difficult to turn from position (0) to position (12), move the steering wheel (to take the load off the steering lock mechanism) until the key turns freely. ▶

Starting (2)

The engine is started when the key is in this position. Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily.

Each time that the vehicle must be started, the ignition key must be turned to the position (0). The **repetitive start prevention lock** of the ignition prevents possible damage to the starter motor if the engine is already running.

WARNING

- **Wait for the vehicle to come to a standstill before removing the ignition key from the lock. The steering lock could be activated immediately - Risk of accident!**
- **Always remove the key from the ignition lock when leaving the vehicle, even if you only intend to be gone for a short period. This is especially important if you must leave children or disabled people in the vehicle. They could accidentally start the engine or work electrical equipment such as the windows possibly resulting in an accident.**
- **Unsupervised use of the keys could result in the engine being started or electrical systems, such as the electric windows, being used. This can result in serious injury.**

Caution

The starter motor will only work when the engine is stopped (ignition key position (2)). ■

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser prevents unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

Inside the key there is a chip that deactivates the electronic immobiliser automatically when the key is inserted into the ignition.

The immobiliser will be activated again automatically as soon as you pull the key out of the ignition lock.

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with the correct code.

Note

The vehicle cannot be operated properly if you do not have a genuine SEAT key. ■

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting petrol engines

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with the correct code.

– Move the gear lever to the neutral position and depress the clutch pedal fully and hold it in this position, the starter will then only have to turn the engine.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 161 to start the engine. ▶

– Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts; the starter motor must not be allowed to run on with the engine.

After starting a very hot engine, you may need to press the accelerator briefly.

When starting from cold, the engine may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve compensators. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about half a minute. If the engine still does not start, the fuel pump fuse should be checked ⇒ page 242, “Fuses”.

WARNING

- **Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness. It can also cause death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.**
- **Never use “cold start sprays”, they could explode or cause the engine to run at high revs. Risk of injury.**

Caution

- When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine. Risk of engine damage.
- The vehicle should not be pushed or towed for more than approximately 50 metres to start the engine. Fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.
- Before attempting to push-start or tow a vehicle to start it, you should first try to start it using the battery of another vehicle. Note and follow the instructions ⇒ page 258, “Jump-starting”.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine by running the engine with the vehicle stationary. You should drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions. ■

Starting diesel engines

The engine can only be started using a genuine SEAT key with the correct code.

– Move the gear lever to the neutral position and depress the clutch pedal fully and hold it in this position, the starter will then only have to turn the engine.

– Turn the ignition key to the starting position.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 161, fig. 131 (1). The indication lamp ⌀ will light for engine pre-heating.

– When the warning lamp goes out, turn the key to position (2) to start the engine. Do not press the accelerator.

– Let go of the ignition key as soon as the engine starts, the starter motor must not be allowed to run on with the engine.

When starting from cold, the engine may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve compensators. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

If there are problems starting the engine, see ⇒ page 258. ▶

Glow plug system for the diesel engine

To avoid unnecessary load on the battery, do not use any other major electrical equipment while the glow plugs are pre-heating.

Start the engine as soon as the glow plug warning lamp ⇒ page 81 goes out.

Starting the engine after the fuel tank has been completely run dry

If the fuel tank has been completely run dry, it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) to start the engine after refuelling with diesel fuel. This is because the system must eliminate air first.

WARNING

- **Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Risk of fatal accidents. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness. It can also cause death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running.**
- **Never use "cold start sprays", they could explode or cause the engine to run at high revs. Risk of injury.**

Caution

- When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine. Risk of engine damage.
- The vehicle should not be pushed or towed for more than approximately 50 metres to start the engine. Fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.
- Before attempting to push-start or tow a vehicle to start it, you should first try to start it using the battery of another vehicle. Note and follow the instructions ⇒ page 258, "Jump-starting".

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine by running the engine with the vehicle stationary. You should drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions. ■

Switching off the engine

– Stopping the engine.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 161, fig. 131 (0).

After the engine is switched off the radiator fan may run on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off. It is also possible that it will turn itself on once more if the temperature of the coolant increases due to the elimination of built up heat in the engine compartment or if this is heated due to prolonged exposure to the heat of the sun.

WARNING

- **Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary.**
- **The brake servo works only when the engine is running. You will need more strength to brake the vehicle when the engine is switched off. As you cannot brake in the normal manner, there is a greater risk of accidents and serious injury.**
- **The steering lock can engage immediately when the key is removed from the ignition lock. The vehicle cannot be steered. Risk of accident.**

Caution

If the engine has been driven hard for a long period, the engine could overheat when it is switched off. Risk of engine damage. For this reason, you should idle the engine for approx. 2 minutes before you switch it off. ■

Manual gearbox

Driving a car with a manual gearbox

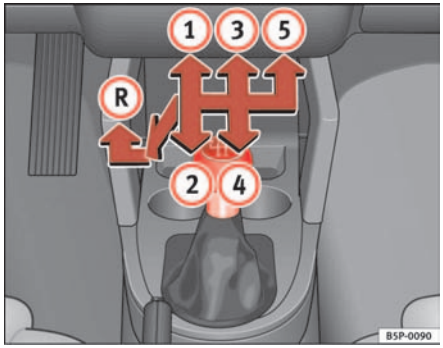

Fig. 132 Detail of the centre console: Shift diagram of a 5-speed manual gearbox

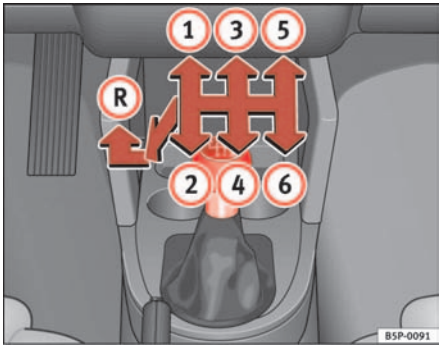

Fig. 133 Detail of the centre console: Shift diagram of a 6-speed manual gearbox

Selecting the reverse gear

– The vehicle should be stationary with the engine idling. Press the clutch right down.

– Place the gear lever into neutral gate and push the lever all the way down.

– Slide the gearlever to the left, and then into the reverse position shown on the gear lever.

The reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is running, before engaging this gear wait about 6 seconds with the clutch pressed in fully in order to protect the gearbox.

The reversing lights come on when the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on. ▶

WARNING

- **When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released.**
- **Never select the reverse gear when the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident.**

Note

- Do not rest your hand on the gear lever when driving. The pressure of your hand could cause premature wear on the selector forks in the gearbox.
- When changing gear, you should always depress the clutch fully to avoid unnecessary wear and damage.
- Do not hold the car “on the clutch” on hills. This causes premature wear and damage to the clutch. ■

Automatic gearbox* / DSG automatic gearbox*

Selector lever positions

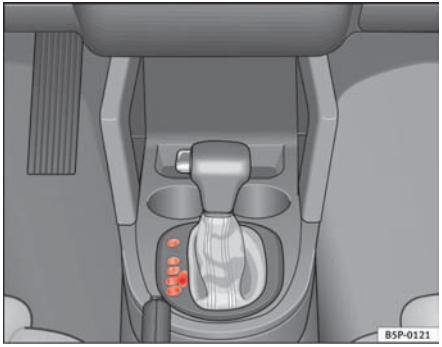

Fig. 134 Section of centre console: selector lever on cars with an automatic gearbox / direct shift gearbox

Selector lever positions indicated on the cover

P Parking position (lever locked).

R Reverse position.

N Neutral position (lever locked). This position is similar to the neutral position for manual gearboxes).

D Drive position (economic driving programme).

S Sports driving position.

+/- Tiptronic driving position (this programme is similar to the operation of a manual gearbox).

Driving programmes

The automatic gearbox / direct shift gearbox has three programmes.

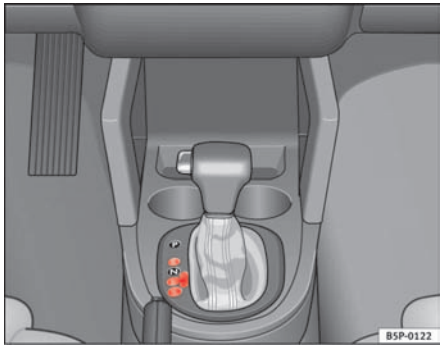

Fig. 135 Programme selection

Selecting the economy programme

– This programme selects a higher gear earlier rather than remain in a lower gear.

– Put the selector lever into position **D** to drive forwards

– Put the selector lever into position **R** to reverse. This position is shared by all programs for reversing.

Selecting the sport programme

– Move the lever to position **S**.

If you select the sport programme, **S**, the programme is designed for a sports mode, that is, a programme which changes up at higher engine speeds to use the full power of the engine. This programme is not recommended for use on the motorway or in the city.

Selecting the manual programme (tiptronic)

This programme enables a driving style similar to that of a manual gearbox.

This programme can be accessed from the gear lever or the levers on the steering wheel, when this option is available ⇒ page 170. ■

Selector lever locking

The selector lever lock prevents gears from being engaged inadvertently, which would cause the vehicle to move.

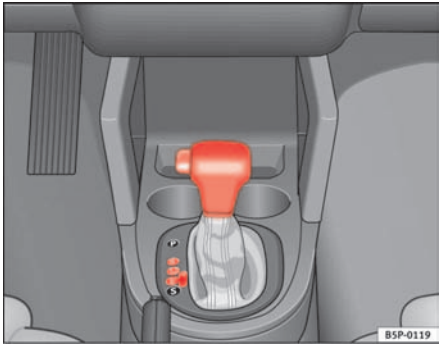

Fig. 136 Deactivating the lock

Releasing the selector lever lock

– Start the vehicle.

– Press and release the brake pedal, at the same time press the button on the selector lever.

The lock is only activated when the vehicle is stopped or at a speed of less than 5 km/h. At higher speeds, the lock is automatically released in position **N**.

For rapid changes of position (e.g. from **R** to **D**) the lever will not lock. If the lever remains in the position **N** more than one second then it is locked. With the automatic lock, the lever is prevented passing from **P** and **N** to any other gear without first pressing the brake pedal.

The selector lever must be put in the position **P** in order to remove the key. ■

Driving with an automatic gearbox* / DSG automatic gearbox*

The drive and reverse gears are automatically engaged.

Fig. 137 Driving

Driving

– Press and hold the foot brake.

– Press on the button on the selector lever knob (on the left) ⇒ fig. 137.

– Select a gear for driving (**R**, **D** or **S**).

– Release the button and wait a few seconds for the gear to engage, a light jerk will be felt.

– Release the brake and accelerate.

Short stop

– Hold the vehicle stationary with the brake pressed down (for example at traffic lights). The selector lever does not need to be put into the positions **P** or **N** for this.

– Do not press the accelerator.

Parking the vehicle

– Press the foot brake and hold to bring the vehicle to a stop.

– Apply the handbrake firmly.

– Press in the button on the selector lever knob, move the lever to the position **P** and release the button.

Driving slowly

– Move the selector lever to the position **D** and press to the right to put the lever into Tiptronic mode.

– Press the gear lever towards (-) to select a lower gear. ▶

Hill stop

– Hold the vehicle, in all cases, using the foot brake to prevent rolling back.

– Do not try to slow the vehicle using another forward gear (engine braking).

Descending gradients

– With the gear engaged, release the brake and accelerate.

The steeper the gradient the lower the gear must be for effective engine braking. For example, if 3rd gear is used on a very steep gradient, the engine braking is insufficient and vehicle accelerates. So that the engine speed does not become excessive, the gearbox changes to the next highest gear. Depress the brake pedal and move the selector lever to the Tiptronic gate to return to 3rd gear.

WARNING

- **The driver should never leave the vehicle while the engine is running or with any gear selected. If for any reason you must leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the handbrake and move the selector lever to position P.**
- **When the engine is running and the positions D, S or R are selected, it is necessary to hold the vehicle with the foot brake because the vehicle will creep at a low speed.**
- **Never accelerate while changing the position of the selector lever (risk of an accident).**
- **The selector lever must never be moved into the positions R or P while moving (risk of an accident).**
- **Before descending a steep gradient, reduce speed and use the Tiptronic programme to select a lower gear.**

WARNING (continued)

- **If you must stop on a hill, always hold the vehicle using the footbrake to avoid rolling back.**
- **The footbrake must not be held for a long period of time, not even lightly; continuous braking will cause overheating of the brakes and a reduction or even a loss of braking power and a significant increase in braking distances.**
- **Never allow the vehicle to coast down a gradient with the selector lever in positions N or D, even when the engine is not running. For descents, the use of the Tiptronic programme is recommended to keep the speed reduced.**

Caution

- Never use the automatic gearbox to hold the vehicle stationary on a hill, even for short periods, as this may overheat the gearbox and cause damage. Apply the handbrake or depress the foot brake to hold the vehicle in position.
- If the vehicle is allowed to roll with the engine stopped but the selector in position N then the gearbox may be damaged because it will not be lubricated. ■

Using the Tiptronic gear system

The Tiptronic system allows the driver to manually select gears

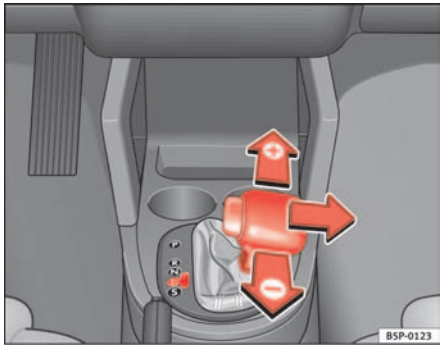

Fig. 138 Changing gear with Tiptronic

Fig. 139 Steering wheel with levers for automatic gearboxes

Overview of driving with the Tiptronic system

Changing gear with Tiptronic (selector lever)

– Put the lever in the position **D** and press towards the right to enter the Tiptronic gate ⇒ fig. 138.

– Press the gear lever forwards (+) to select a higher gear.

– Press the gear lever back (-) to select a lower gear.

Changing gear with the steering wheel levers

– Pull right paddle (+) towards the steering wheel to change up ⇒ fig. 139.

– Pull left paddle (-) towards the steering wheel to change down ⇒ fig. 139.

The levers on the steering wheel give access to the manual driving programme, regardless of the programme previously selected.

Overview of driving with the Tiptronic system

When accelerating, the automatic (DSG) gearbox automatically shifts up to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the automatic gearbox / direct shift gearbox does not change down until the point is reached where the engine could no longer overrev.

If the “tiptronic” is selected whilst the vehicle is in motion and the automatic gearbox / direct shift gearbox is in the 3rd gear in selector lever position **D**, the “tiptronic” will then also be in the 3rd gear. ▶

Note

- The gear levers in the steering wheel can be used regardless of the position of the selector lever when the car is moving. ■

Handbrake

Using the handbrake

The handbrake should be applied firmly to prevent the vehicle from accidentally rolling away.

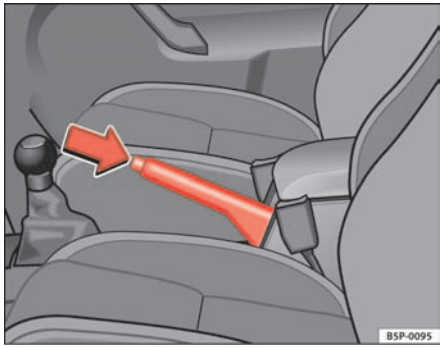

Fig. 140 Handbrake between the front seats

Always apply the handbrake when you leave your vehicle and when you park.

Applying the handbrake

– Pull the handbrake lever up firmly ⇒ fig. 140.

Releasing the handbrake

– Pull the lever up slightly and press the locking knob in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 140 and guide the handbrake lever down fully ⇒ ⚠.

Always apply the handbrake *firmly*. This prevents you driving with the handbrake applied ⇒ ⚠.

The handbrake warning lamp (!) lights up when the handbrake is applied and the ignition switched on. The warning lamp goes out when the handbrake is released.

If you drive faster than 6 km/h with the handbrake on, the following message* will appear in the instrument display: **HANDBRAKE ON**. Also, an audible warning is given.

WARNING

- **Never use the handbrake to slow down the vehicle when it is in motion. The braking distance is considerably longer, as braking is only applied to the rear wheels. Risk of accident!**
- **If it is only partially released this will cause overheating of the rear brakes, which can impair the function of the brake system and could lead to an accident. This also causes premature wear on the rear brake pads/linings.**

Caution

Always apply the handbrake before you leave the vehicle. The first gear should also be selected. ■

Parking

The handbrake should always be firmly applied when the vehicle is parked.

Always note the following points when parking the vehicle:

– Use the foot brake to stop the vehicle.

– Apply the handbrake.

– The first gear should also be selected.

– Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition lock. Turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering lock.

– Always take you car keys with you when you leave the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

Additional notes on parking the vehicle on gradients:

Turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll against the kerb if it did start to roll.

- If the vehicle is facing **downhill**, turn the front wheels so that they point *towards the kerb*.
- If the vehicle is facing **uphill**, turn the front wheels so that they point *away from the kerb*.
- Secure the vehicle as normal by applying the handbrake firmly and selecting first gear.

⚠ WARNING

- **Take measures to reduce the risk of injury when you leave your vehicle unattended.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite inflammable materials, such as dry grass, low bushes, spilt fuel etc.**
- **Never allow vehicle occupants to remain in the vehicle when it is locked. They would be unable to open the vehicle from the inside, and could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. In the event of an emergency, locked doors will delay assistance to occupants.**
- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. They could set the vehicle in motion, for example, by releasing the handbrake or the gear lever / selector lever.**
- **Depending on weather conditions, it may become extremely hot or cold inside the vehicle. This can be fatal.** ■

Acoustic parking aid system*

Rear parking aid

The parking aid system will use an acoustic signal to warn of the approach of any object towards the rear of the vehicle.

Description

The acoustic parking aid system will measure the distance between the rear of the vehicle and any possible obstacle using four ultrasonic sensors located on the rear bumper. The measuring range of the sensors starts at **approximately and depending on the nature of the obstacle** at a distance of:

- side of the rear bumper: 0.8 m
- centre of the rear bumper: 1.3 m ▶

Activation

The system is activated by engagement of the reverse gear. A brief acoustic signal confirms the activation and correct function of the system.

Reversing

The distance warning will begin as soon as an obstacle is detected by the system. The frequency of the bleeps emitted by the system will increase rapidly as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

Within a short distance of about 25 cm, a continuous signal sounds (stop signal). The driver should not reverse any further.

Trailer towing

For vehicles fitted with a tow bar by the manufacturer, the parking aid system will not be activated by the engagement of the reverse gear when pulling a trailer, as the trailer's electric connecter will be plugged into the vehicle.

To avoid system malfunctions, when not driving with a trailer, remove the trailer hitch.

Possible faults

If a continuous bleep sounds for some seconds when the reverse gear is engaged, this indicates that there is a fault in the parking aid system.

If the fault continues until the ignition is turned off, the acoustic signal warning of the fault will not be emitted every time the system is reactivated (by engaging the reverse gear). Thus, the system ready indication will not sound either. Have the fault repaired by an Authorised Service Centre as soon as possible.

If there is no ready signal or no acoustic warning signal then the parking aid loudspeaker is faulty and may not warn of obstacles.

To ensure that the system works properly, the sensors must be kept clean and free of ice and snow.

WARNING

- **The sensors have blind spots in which obstacles may not be detected.**
- **Always look out for small children and animals because the system will not always detect them. Always pay attention when reversing to avoid accidents.**
- **The parking aid is not a replacement for driver awareness. The driver must take full responsibility for parking and other manoeuvres.**

Caution

- Please note that low obstacles detected by the system may no longer be registered by the sensors as the car moves closer, so the system will not give any further warning. Certain kinds of obstacles (such as wire fences, chains, thin posts or trailer draw bars, high kerbs or painted railings etc) may not always be detected by the system, so there is a risk of damaging the vehicle in such cases.
- Obstacles with uniform edges and bumps may not be detected immediately by the system due to their geometry. Take special care around this type of obstacle such as corners, rectangular objects, etc.., these can cause damage to the vehicle.
- Be especially carefully when manoeuvring into a corner between two perpendicular walls. Survey the approach of the wall to the side of the vehicle (using the mirrors)
- The parking aid system does not replace use of the mirrors for manoeuvres.
- Distant ultra-sonic sources (hammers, tyres, construction machinery, other vehicles with PDC) may interfere with the operation of the system.
- Periodic cleaning of the sensors, take care not to damage or scratch them. When cleaning with high pressure washers or steam cleaners, the sensors should be sprayed for only a very short period and from a distance of more than 10 cm. ■

Cruise control system (CCS)*

Description

The cruise control system is able to maintain the set speed in the range from approx. 30 km/h to 180 km/h.

Once the speed setting has been saved, you may take your foot off the accelerator.

WARNING

It could be dangerous to use the cruise control system if it is not possible to drive at constant speed.

- **For safety reasons the cruise control system should not be used in dense traffic, in sections with bends or where roads conditions are poor (e.g. aquaplaning, loose chippings, slippery surfaces, snow). Risk of accident.**
- **Always switch off the CCS when you have finished using it. This will prevent you using it by mistake.**
- **It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the current road, traffic or weather conditions. Risk of accident.**

Note

The cruise control cannot maintain a constant speed when descending gradients. The vehicle will accelerate under its own weight. Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle. ■

Switching the cruise control system on and off

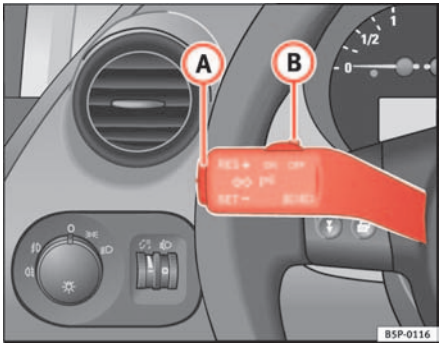

Fig. 141 Turn signal and main beam lever: Switch and rocker switch for CCS

Switching on the system

– Push the switch ⇒ fig. 141 (B) to the left to **ON**.

Switching off the system

– Either push the switch (B) to the right to **OFF** or turn the ignition off when the vehicle is stationary.

When the cruise control is on and a speed is programmed, the indicator on the instrument panel is lit.[19)]

If the cruise control system is *switched off*, the symbol is switched off. The system will also be switched off fully when the **1st** gear is selected.* ■

[19)] Depending on the model version

Setting speed*

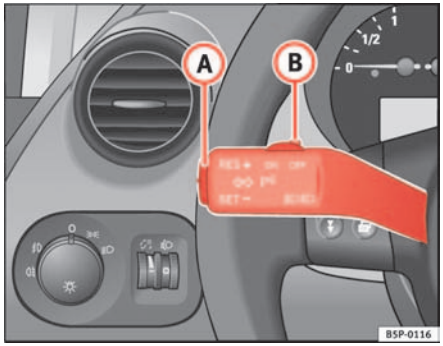

Fig. 142 Turn signal and main beam lever: switch and rocker switch for CCS

– Press the lower part **SET** of the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 142 (A) once briefly when you have reached the speed you wish to set.

When you release the rocker switch, the current speed is set and held constant. ■

Adjusting set speed*

The speed can be altered without touching the accelerator or the brake.

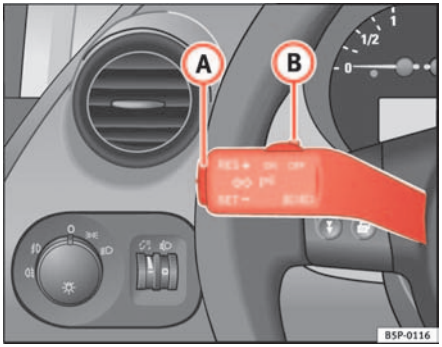

Fig. 143 Turn signal and main beam lever: switch and rocker switch for CCS

Setting a higher speed

– Press the upper part **RES+** of the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 143 (A) to increase the speed. The vehicle will continue to accelerate for as long as you keep the rocker switch pressed. When you release the switch, the new speed is stored.

Setting a lower speed

– Press the lower part **SET–** of the rocker switch (A) to reduce the speed. The vehicle will automatically reduce its speed for as long as you keep the switch pressed. When you release the switch, the new speed is stored. ▶

When you increase speed with the accelerator and then release the pedal, the system will automatically restore the set speed. This will not be the case, however, if the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h higher than the stored speed for longer than 5 minutes. The speed will have to be stored again.

Control of the set speed is switched off if you reduce speed by depressing the brake pedal. You can reactivate the control by pressing once on the upper part of the rocker switch **RES+** ⇒ page 175, fig. 143 (A).

WARNING

It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the current road, traffic or weather conditions. Risk of accident. ■

Switching off the system temporarily*

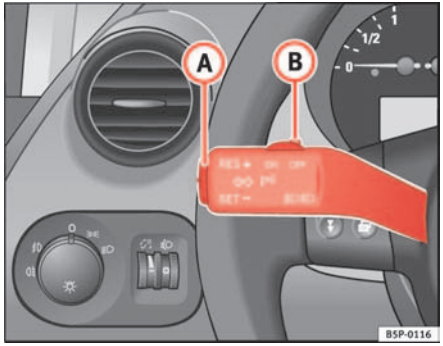

Fig. 144 Turn signal and main beam lever: switch and rocker switch for CCS

The cruise control system will be switched off in the following situations:

- if the brake pedal is depressed,
- if the clutch pedal is depressed,
- if the vehicle is accelerated to over 180 km/h,
- when the lever (B) is moved in the direction of **OFF** without fully being inserted.

To resume the cruise control, release the brake or clutch pedal or reduce the vehicle speed to less than 180 km/h and press once on the upper part of the rocker switch **RES** ⇒ fig. 144 (A).

WARNING

It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the current road, traffic or weather conditions. Risk of accident. ■

Turning off the cruise control system*

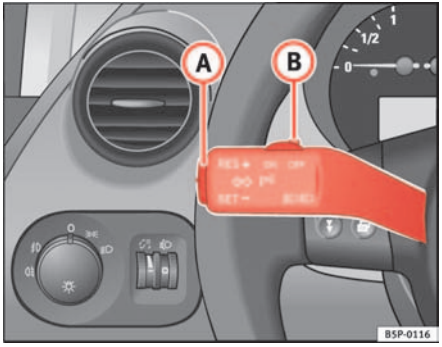

Fig. 145 Turn signal and main beam lever: switch and rocker switch for CCS ▶

Vehicles with a manual gearbox

The system **is completely turned off** by moving the control (A) all the way to the right hand side (OFF engaged), or when the vehicle is stationary, ignition off.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox / DSG* automatic gearbox

To completely turn off the cruise control system, engage the gear selection lever into one of the following positions: **P**, **N**, **R** or **1** or stop the vehicle and turn the ignition off. ■

Tips and Maintenance

Intelligent technology

Brakes

Brake servo

The brake servo amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It works **only when the engine is running**.

If the brake servo is not functioning due to a malfunction, or if the vehicle has to be towed, you will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder to make up for the lack of servo assistance.

WARNING

The braking distance can also be affected by external factors.

- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off. Failure to do so could result in an accident. The braking distance is increased considerably as the brake servo does not function.**
- **If the brake servo is not functioning, for example if the vehicle is being towed, you will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder than normal.** ■

Brake assist system (BAS)*

In an emergency, most drivers brake in time, but not with maximum force. This results in unnecessarily long braking distances.

The brake assist system intervenes here, if you press the brake pedal very quickly, the brake assist system registers an emergency situation. It then very quickly builds up the full brake pressure so that the ABS can be activated more quickly and efficiently, thus reducing the braking distance.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal. The brake assist system switches off automatically as soon as you release the brake.

WARNING

- **The risk of accident is higher if you drive too fast, if you do not keep your distance to the vehicle in front, and when the road surface is slippery or wet. The increased accident risk cannot be reduced by the brake assist system.**
- **The brake assist system cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with the brake assist system! Therefore, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving.** ■

Anti-lock brake system and traction control M-ABS (ABS and TCS)

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system prevents the wheels locking during braking.

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) is an important part of the vehicle's active safety system.

How the ABS works

If one of the wheels turns too slowly in relation to the road speed, and is close to locking, the system will reduce the braking pressure for this wheel. The driver is made aware of this control process by a **pulsating of the brake pedal** and audible noise. This is a deliberate warning to the driver that one or more of the wheels is tending to lock and the ABS control function has intervened. In this situation it is important to keep the brake pedal fully depressed so the ABS can regulate the brake application. Do not "pump".

If you brake hard on a slippery road surface, the best possible control is retained as the wheels do not lock.

However, ABS will not necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance could even be longer if you brake on gravel or on fresh snow covering a slippery surface.

WARNING

- **The anti-lock brake system cannot defy the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ABS! If you notice that the ABS is working (to counteract locked wheels under braking), you should reduce speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving.**

WARNING (continued)

- **The effectiveness of ABS is also determined by the tyres fitted** **⇒ page 225.**
- **If the running gear or brakes are modified, the effectiveness of the ABS could be severely limited.** ■

Traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system prevents the drive wheels from spinning when the car is accelerating.

Description and operation of the traction control system during acceleration (TCS)

TCS reduces engine power to help prevent the drive wheels of front-wheel drive vehicles losing traction during acceleration. The system works in the entire speed range in conjunction with ABS. If a malfunction should occur in the ABS, the TCS will also be out of action.

TCS helps the vehicle to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

The TCS is switched on automatically when the engine is started. If necessary, it may be turned on or off pushing the button on the centre console.

When the TCS is off, the warning lamp is lit. The TCS should normally be left switched on at all times. Only in exceptional circumstances, when slipping of the wheels is required, should it be disconnected for example

- With compact temporary spare wheel.
- When using the snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces
- When the vehicle is bogged-down, to free it by "rocking."

The TCS should be switched on again afterwards as soon as possible.

WARNING

- **It must be remembered that TCS cannot defy the laws of physics. This should be kept in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by TCS tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

Caution

- In order to ensure that TCS function correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.
- Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the ABS and TCS. ■

Electronic stabilisation program (ESP)*

General notes

The electronic stabilisation program increases the vehicle's stability on the road.

The electronic stabilisation program helps to reduce the danger of skidding.

The electronic stabilisation programme (ESP) consists of **ABS, EDL, TCS and Steering manoeuvre recommendations.**

Electronic Stabilising Program (ESP)*

ESP reduces the danger of skidding by braking the wheels individually.

The system uses the steering wheel angle and road speed to calculate the changes of direction desired by the driver, and constantly compares them with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. If the desired course is not being maintained (for instance, if the car is starting to skid), then the ESP compensates automatically by braking the appropriate wheel.

The forces acting on the braked wheel bring the vehicle back to a stable condition. If the vehicle tends to oversteer, the system will act on the front wheel on the outside of the turn.

Steering manoeuvre recommendations

This is a complementary safety function included in the ESP This function aids the driver to better stabilize the vehicle in a critical situation. For example, in case of sudden braking surface with varied adherence, the vehicle will tend to destabilize its trajectory to the right to or to the left. In this case the ESP recognizes the situation and helps the driver with a counter steering manoeuvre from the power steering.

This function simply provides the driver with a recommended manoeuvre in critical situations.

The vehicle doesn't steer itself with this function, the driver has full control of the vehicle at all times.

WARNING

- **It must be remembered that ESP cannot defy the laws of physics. This should be kept in mind, particularly on slippery and wet roads and when towing a trailer.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the condition of the roads and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by ESP tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

Caution

- In order to ensure that ESP functions correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.
- Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the ABS, EDL, ESP and TCS.

Note

To disconnect using the ESP button ⇒ page 160. ■

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system prevents the wheels locking during braking ⇒ page 180. ■

Electronic differential lock (EDL)*

The electronic differential lock helps prevent the loss of traction caused if one of the driven wheels starts spinning.

EDL helps the vehicle to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

The system will control the revolutions of the drive wheels using the ABS sensors (in case of an EDL fault the warning lamp for ABS lights up) ⇒ page 78.

At speeds of up to approximately 80 km/h, it is able to balance out differences in the speed of the driven wheels of approximately 100 rpm caused by a slippery road surface on *one side* of the vehicle. It does this by braking the wheel which has lost traction and distributing more driving force to the other driven wheel via the differential.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle will continue to function normally without EDL. For this reason, the driver is not informed that the EDL has been switched off.

The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

WARNING

- **When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. Despite EDL, the driven wheels may start to spin. This could impair the vehicle's stability.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to suit road conditions and the traffic situation. Do not let the extra safety afforded by EDL tempt you into taking any risks when driving, this can cause accidents.**

Caution

Modifications to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, the brake system, running gear or any components affecting the wheels and tyres) could affect the efficiency of the EDL ⇒ page 201. ■

The traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system prevents the drive wheels from spinning when the car is accelerating ⇒ page 180. ■

Driving and the environment

Running-in

Running-in a new engine

The engine needs to be run-in over the first 1,500 km.

Up to 1,000 kilometres

– Do not drive faster than three quarters of top speed.

– Do not accelerate hard.

– Avoid high engine revolutions.

– Do not tow a trailer.

From 1000 to 1500 km

– Speeds can be *gradually* increased to the maximum road speed or maximum permissible engine speed (rpm).

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded in.

For the sake of the environment

If the engine is run-in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and its oil consumption reduced. ■

Running-in tyres and brake pads

New tyres should be run-in carefully for the first 500 km. New brake pads should be run-in carefully for the first 200 km.

During the first 200 km, you can compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. If you need to make an emergency stop, the braking distance will be longer with new brake pads than with brake pads that have been run-in.

WARNING

- **New tyres do not give maximum grip to start with, and require running-in. This may cause an accident. Drive particularly carefully in the first 500 km.**
- **New brake pads must be "run-in" and do not have the correct friction properties during the first 200 km. However, the reduced braking capacity may be compensated by pressing on the brake pedal a little harder.** ■

Braking effect and braking distance

The braking effect and braking distance are influenced by driving situations and road conditions.

The efficiency of the brakes depends directly on the **brake pad** wear. The rate of wear of the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way the vehicle is driven. If you often drive in town traffic, drive short distances or have a sporty driving style, we recommend that you have the thickness of your brake pads checked by an ▶

Authorised Service Centre more frequently than recommended in the Service Schedule.

If you drive with **wet brakes**, for example after driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the car, the braking effect will be reduced as the brake discs will be wet, or possibly frozen (in winter): the brakes must be "dried" through careful braking.

The **brake fluid** must be changed every two years at the latest. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. This prevents the brakes developing their full braking effect.

WARNING

Longer braking distances and faults in the brake system increase the risk of accidents.

- **New brake pads must be run in and do not have the correct friction during the first 200 km. However, the reduced braking capacity may be compensated by pressing on the brake pedal a little harder. This also applies when new brake pads are fitted.**
- **If brakes are wet or frozen, or if you are driving on roads which have been gritted with salt, braking power may set in later than normal.**
- **On steep descents if the brakes are excessively used they will over heat. Before driving down a long steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and change to a lower gear (or move the selector lever to a lower gear if your vehicle has automatic transmission). This makes use of engine braking and relieves the brakes.**
- **Never let the brakes "rub" by applying light pressure. Continuous braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will increase the braking distance. Apply and then release the brakes alternately.**
- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off. The braking distance is increased considerably as the brake servo does not function.**
- **Very heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. This impairs the braking effect.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat. Observe the relevant instructions before purchasing accessories ⇒ page 201, "Modifications".**
- **If a brake circuit fails, the braking distance will be increased considerably. Contact a qualified workshop immediately and avoid unnecessary journeys.** ■

Exhaust gas emission control system

Catalytic converter*

To conserve the useful life of the catalytic converter

– Always use unleaded petrol.

– Do not run the fuel tank dry.

– For engine oil changes, do not replenish with too much engine oil ⇒ page 214, "Topping up engine oil".

– Never tow the vehicle to start it, use jump leads if necessary ⇒ page 258.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, reduce speed immediately and have the vehicle inspected at the nearest qualified workshop. In general, the exhaust warning lamp will light up when any of the described symptoms occur ⇒ page 72. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the environment. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating. ▶

WARNING

The catalytic converter reaches very high temperatures! Fire hazard!

- **Never park where the catalytic converter could come into contact with dry grass or inflammable materials under the vehicle.**
- **Do not apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields on the exhaust system. These materials could catch fire when the vehicle is driven.**

Caution

Never fully drain the fuel tank, in this case, the irregularity of the fuel supply may cause ignition problems. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the emission control system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust under some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel used. Quite often the problem can be remedied by changing to another brand of fuel. ■

Diesel engine particulate filter*

The diesel engine particulate filter eliminates soot produced by burning diesel.

The diesel engine dust filter eliminates most of the soot from the exhaust gas system. The soot particulates accumulate in the filter where they are regularly burned. In order to facilitate this process, occasional journeys at speeds of more than 60 kmh should be made. If the vehicle is only used for short trips then the soot will build up in the particulate filter.

WARNING

- **The diesel engine particulate filter may reach extremely high temperatures; it should not enter into contact with flammable materials underneath the vehicle. Failure to comply could result in fire.**

Caution

Vehicles equipped with a diesel engine particulate filter must not be refuelled using biodiesel (RME), given that the fuel system may be damaged. ■

Driving abroad

Notes

For driving abroad, the following must be taken into consideration:

- For vehicles fitted with a catalytic converter ensure that unleaded petrol is available for the journey. See the chapter “Refuelling”. Automobile organisations will have information about service station networks selling unleaded fuel.
- In some countries it is possible that a vehicle model is sold under conditions where some spare parts are not available or that the Authorised Service Centres may only carry out limited repairs.

SEAT importers and distributors will gladly provide information about the technical preparation of your vehicle in addition to necessary maintenance and repair possibilities. ■

Adhesive strips for headlights

If you have to drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, the asymmetric dipped beam headlights will dazzle oncoming traffic.

To prevent dazzling, you must apply stickers to certain parts of the headlight lenses. Further information is available from your Authorised Service Centre.

Vehicles with directional headlights should have the turn system disconnected beforehand. Contact a specialist workshop for this. ■

Adjusting headlights for driving on the left

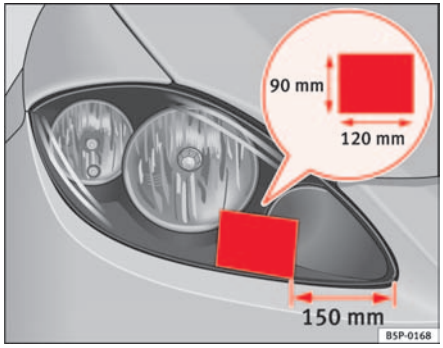

Fig. 146 Right headlight

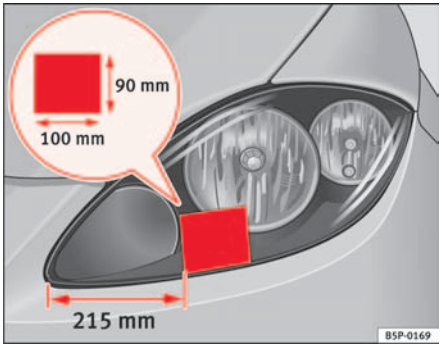

Fig. 147 Left headlight

On the right hand side headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side ⇒ fig. 146.

On the left hand side headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side ⇒ fig. 147. ■

Covering headlights for driving on the right

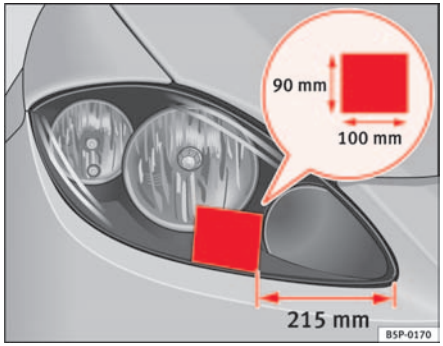

Fig. 148 Right headlight

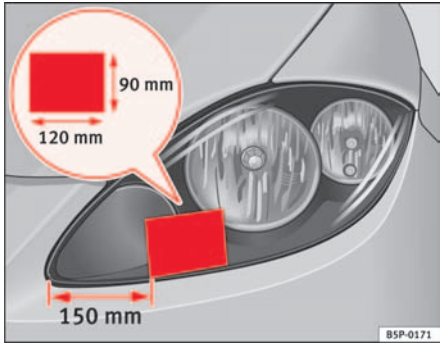

Fig. 149 Left headlight

On the right headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side.

On the left headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side. ■

Covering simple headlights for driving on the right

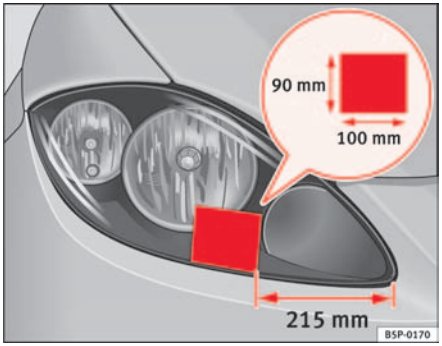

Fig. 150 Right headlight

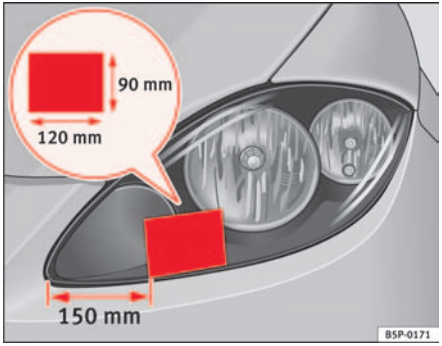

Fig. 151 Left headlight ▶

On the right headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side.

On the left headlight, if you are changing from driving on the left-hand side to the right-hand side. ■

Covering Bixenon headlights for driving on the left

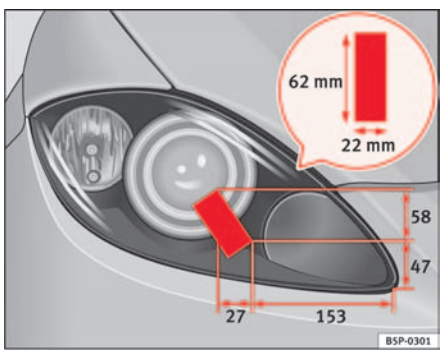

Fig. 152 Right headlight

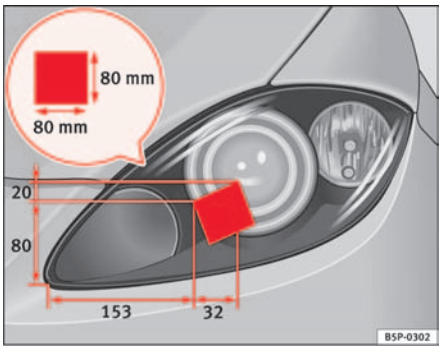

Fig. 153 Left headlight

On the right hand side headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side. ⇒ fig. 152.

On the left hand side headlight, if you are changing from driving on the right-hand side to the left-hand side ⇒ fig. 153. ■

Trailer towing

What do you need to bear in mind when towing a trailer?

Your vehicle may be used to tow a trailer when fitted with the correct equipment.

If the car is supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements for towing a trailer. For the **after-market fitting** of a trailer towing bracket see ⇒ page 203.

Connectors

Your vehicle is fitted with a 12-pin connector for the electrical connection between the trailer and the vehicle.

If the trailer has a **7-pin plug** you will need to use an adapter cable. This is available from any SEAT dealer.

Trailer weight / draw bar loading

Never exceed the authorised towing limit. If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can then climb correspondingly steeper gradients.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for **altitudes** up to 1,000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the vehicle's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density. The maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the vehicle and trailer combination must be reduced by 10% for every further 1,000 m (or part thereof). The gross combination weight is the actual weight of the laden vehicle plus the actual weight of the laden trailer. Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted **draw bar weight** on the ball joint of the towing bracket, but do not exceed the specified limit.

The figures for **trailer weights** and **draw bar weights** that are given on the data plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct figures for your specific model, which may be *lower* than these figures for the towing bracket, are given in the registration documents ⇒ Section "Technical data".

Distributing the load

Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible. Loads carried in the trailer must be secured to prevent them moving.

Tyre pressure

Set tyre pressure to the maximum permissible pressure shown on the sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap. Set the tyre pressure of the trailer tyres in accordance with the trailer manufacturer's recommendations.

Exterior mirrors

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard mirrors. If this is not the case you should have additional mirrors fitted. Both exterior mirrors should be mounted on hinged extension brackets. Adjust the mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear.

WARNING

Never transport people in a trailer. This could result in fatal accidents.

Note

- Towing a trailer places additional demands on the vehicle. We recommend additional services between the normal inspection intervals if the vehicle is used frequently for towing a trailer.
- Find out whether special regulations apply to towing a trailer in your country. ■

Ball coupling of towing bracket*

Depending on the model version, the spherical head on the trailer hook may be stored in the tool box.

The ball coupling is provided with instructions on fitting and removing the ball coupling of the towing bracket. ▶

WARNING

The towing bracket ball coupling must be stored securely in the luggage compartment to prevent them being flung through the vehicle and causing injury.

Note

- By law, the ball coupling must be removed if a trailer is not being towed and it obscures the number plate. ■

Driving tips

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care.

Weight distribution

The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle is very unfavourable. However, if this cannot be avoided, drive extra slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.

Speed

The stability of the vehicle and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible speed in unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially when driving downhill.

You should always reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of **snaking**. Never try to stop the “snaking” by increasing speed.

Always brake in good time. If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking. Select a low gear in good time before going down a steep descent. This enables you to use the engine braking to slow down the vehicle.

Heating

At very high temperatures and during prolonged ascents, driving in a low gear and high engine speed, always monitor the temperature indicator for the coolant ⇒ page 55.

Electronic Stabilisation Program*

Do not switch off the ESP* when towing a trailer. The ESP* makes it easier to stabilise if the trailer starts to snake. ■

Driving economically and with respect for the environment

General notes

Fuel consumption depends largely on your personal driving style.

Fuel economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on three factors:

- Personal driving style
- Conditions of use (weather, road surface)
- Technical requirements

By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. This section suggests methods of lessening the impact on the environment and reducing your operating costs at the same time. ■

Think ahead when driving

A vehicle uses most fuel when accelerating. If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the vehicle roll slowly to a stop, for instance when you can see that the next traffic lights are red. ■

Regular servicing

By taking your car to an Authorised Service Centre for regular servicing you can establish a basis for good fuel economy *before* you start driving. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of **improved fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value.

A badly serviced engine can consume up to 10% more fuel than necessary.

Check the **oil level** every time you fill the tank ⇒ page 213. Oil consumption depends to a great extent on the engine load and engine speed. Depending on your personal driving style, oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km. ■

Avoid short journeys

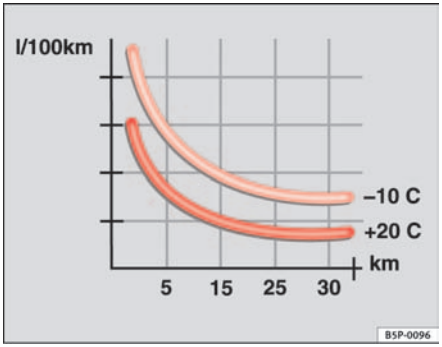

Fig. 154 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at two different ambient temperatures

The engine and catalytic converter need to reach their proper **working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions.

Directly after a cold start, the engine uses about 50-70 litres of fuel per 100 km. This figure then drops to 20-30 litres per 100 km after about one kilometre. The engine only reaches its working temperature after about *four* kilometres, when fuel consumption will return to a normal level. You should therefore avoid short journeys.

The **ambient temperature** has a decisive influence.

The illustration shows the different rates of fuel consumption for the same distance at both +20°C and -10°C. Your vehicle will use more fuel in winter than in summer. ■

Cleaning and caring for your vehicle

General notes

Regular washing and care help maintain the value of your vehicle.

Regular care

Regular and expert care helps to **maintain the value** of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for acknowledging warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The best way to protect the car against environmental contaminants is to wash and wax it *frequently*. The longer substances such as insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other aggressive materials remain on the vehicle, the more damage they do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in strong sunlight) further intensify the corrosive effect.

After the period when salt is put on the roads it is important to have the **underside** of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

Car care products

Car care products are available from your Authorised Service Centre. Keep the product instructions until you have used up the product.

WARNING

- **Car care products can be toxic. For this, they must always be kept closed in their original container. Keep out of children's reach. Failure to comply could result in poisoning.**
- **Always read and observe the instructions and warnings on the package before using car care products. Improper use could damage your health or**

WARNING (continued)

your vehicle. The use of certain products may produce noxious vapours; these should be used in well ventilated areas.

- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids. These are toxic and highly flammable. There is a fire / explosion risk.**
- **Before you wash your vehicle, or carry out any maintenance, switch off the engine, apply the handbrake firmly and remove the key from the ignition.**

Caution

Never attempt to remove dirt, mud or dust if the surface of the vehicle is dry. Never use a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning purposes. This could damage the paintwork or glass on your vehicle. Soak dirt, mud or dust with plenty of water.

For the sake of the environment

- When purchasing car care products, try to select ones which are not harmful to the environment.
- Left over car care products should not be disposed of with ordinary household waste. Observe the disposal information on the package. ■

Care of the vehicle exterior

Automatic car washes

The paint is so durable that the car can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the car wash, the brushes used, the filtering of the wash water and the type of detergents and wax solutions used, etc.

After the car has been washed, the **brakes** could respond later than normal as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or even frozen in winter. You must "dry" the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 183, "Braking effect and braking distance".

WARNING

Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident. ■

Washing by hand

Washing the vehicle

– First soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse off.

– Clean the vehicle with a soft sponge, a glove or a brush. Start on the roof and work your way down. Use only light pressure.

– Rinse the sponge or glove as much as possible.

– Special car shampoo should only be used for very stubborn dirt.

– Clean the wheels, sill panels etc. last using a different sponge or glove.

– Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water.

– Dry the surface of the vehicle gently using a chamois leather.

– If it is **cold**, dry the rubber seals and the surfaces they touch with a cloth to prevent them freezing. Apply silicone spray to the rubber seals.

After cleaning the vehicle

– If possible, avoid sudden braking directly after washing the vehicle. You must "dry" the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 183, "Braking effect and braking distance".

WARNING

- **The ignition must always be switched off before the vehicle is washed.**
- **Protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp metal edges when cleaning the underbody, the inside of the wheel housings etc. Risk of injury.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident.**

Caution

- Never attempt to remove dirt, mud or dust if the surface of the vehicle is dry. Never use a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning purposes. This could scratch the paintwork or glass on your vehicle.
- Washing the vehicle in cold weather: if the vehicle is rinsed with a hose, do not direct the water into the lock cylinders or the gaps around the doors, ▶

luggage compartment, or bonnet. This could cause them to freeze. Otherwise there is a risk of malfunction.

For the sake of the environment

In the interests of environmental protection, the car should be washed only in specially provided wash bays. This prevents toxic, oil-laden waste water entering the sewerage system. In some districts, washing vehicles anywhere else may be prohibited.

Note

Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. ■

Washing the car with a high pressure cleaner

Be particularly careful when using a high pressure cleaner!

– Always observe the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner, particularly those concerning the **pressure** and the **spraying distance**.

– Increase the spraying distance for soft materials and painted bumpers.

– Do not use a high pressure cleaner to remove ice or snow from windows ⇒ page 195.

– Never use concentrated jet nozzles or so-called “dirt blasters” ⇒ ⚠.

– If possible, avoid sudden braking directly after washing the vehicle. You must “dry” the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 183.

WARNING

- **Never wash tyres with a concentrated jet or cylindrical jet (“rotating nozzle”). Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident.**

Caution

- Do not use water hotter than 60°C. This could damage the car.
- To avoid damage to the vehicle, maintain a sufficient distance from sensitive materials for example: flexible hoses, plastic, sound proofing, etc. This is especially important for bumpers painted in the same colour as the vehicle. The closer the nozzle is to the surface, the greater the wear on the material. ■

Waxing the car

Regular waxing protects the paintwork.

You need to apply wax to your car if water does not form small drops and run off the paintwork when it is *clean*.

Good quality *hard wax* is available from your Authorised Service Centre.

A good coat of wax helps to protects the paintwork from environmental contaminants ⇒ page 192. It is also effective in protecting against minor scratches.

Even if a **wax solution** is used regularly in the car wash, it is advisable to protect the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year. ■

Polishing the paintwork

Polishing brings back gloss to the paintwork.

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax. Polish can be obtained from your Authorised Service Centre.

The car must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint ⇒ page 194, “Waxing the car”.

Caution

To prevent damage to the paintwork:

- Do not use polishes and hard wax on painted parts with a matt finish or on plastic parts.
- Do not polish your vehicle in a sandy or dusty environment. ■

Caring for plastic parts

Solvents will damage plastic parts.

If normal washing fails to clean plastic parts, clean them with special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning and care products.

Caution

- The use of liquid air conditioners directly over the air vents of the vehicle may damage the plastic parts if the liquid is accidentally spilled.
- Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material. ■

Cleaning windows and exterior mirrors

Cleaning the windows

– Moisten the windows with commercially available, alcohol based glass cleaner.

– Dry the windows with a clean chamois leather or a lint-free cloth.

Removing snow

– Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and mirrors.

Removing ice

– Use a de-icer spray.

Use a clean cloth or chamois leather to dry the windows. Chamois leathers that have been used on painted surfaces are not suitable for use on windows. They will be soiled with wax deposits that would smear the windows.

If possible use a de-icing spray to remove ice. If you use an ice scraper, push it in one direction only. Do not move it to and fro.

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to clean off rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits.

Wax deposits have to be removed with a special cleaner that is available from your Authorised Service Centre. Wax deposits on the windscreen could cause the wiper blades to judder. A window cleaner specifically for removing wax will stop the blades juddering if added to the windscreen washer fluid. Grease removing cleaners will not remove wax deposits.

Caution

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack! ▶

- The heating element for the rear window is located on the inner side of the window. To prevent damage, do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the window. ■

Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

Clean wiper blades are essential for clear vision.

1. Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the windscreen wiper blades.
2. Use window cleaner to clean the windscreen wiper blades. Use a sponge or a cloth to remove stubborn stains. ■

Care of rubber seals

If rubber seals are well looked after, they will not freeze so quickly.

1. Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber seals.
2. Apply a specialist care product to the rubber seals.

The weather strips on the doors, windows, bonnet and rear lid will remain pliable and last longer if they are treated with a suitable care product (for example silicone spray).

Caring for rubber seals will also prevent premature ageing and leaks. The doors will be easier to open. If rubber seals are well looked after, they will not freeze so quickly in winter. ■

Door lock cylinders

The door lock cylinders can freeze up in winter.

To de-ice the lock cylinders you should only use spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties. ■

Cleaning chrome parts

1. Clean chrome parts with a damp cloth.
2. Polish chrome parts with a soft, dry cloth.

If this does not provide satisfying results, use a specialist **chrome cleaning product**. Chrome cleaning products will remove stains and coatings from the surface.

Caution

To prevent scratching chrome surfaces:

- Never use an abrasive care product on chrome.
- Do not clean or polish chrome parts in a sandy or dusty environment. ■

Steel wheels

– Clean steel wheels regularly using a separate sponge.

Use an industrial cleaner to remove brake dust. Any damage to the paint on steel wheels should be repaired before the metal starts to rust. ▶

WARNING

- **Never wash tyres with a cylindrical jet. Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident. If possible, avoid sudden braking immediately after washing the vehicle. You must "dry" the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 183, "Braking effect and braking distance".** ■

WARNING

- **Never wash tyres with a cylindrical jet. Even at large spraying distances and short cleaning times, visible and invisible damage can occur to the tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident. If possible, avoid sudden braking immediately after washing the vehicle. You must "dry" the brakes by applying the brakes carefully several times ⇒ page 183, "Braking effect and braking distance".** ■

Cleaning alloy wheels

Every two weeks

– Wash salt and brake dust from alloy wheels.

– Use an acid free detergent to clean the wheels.

Every three months

– Apply a hard wax compound to the wheels.

Alloy wheels require regular attention to preserve their appearance. It is important to remove road salt and brake dust by washing the wheels at regular intervals, otherwise the finish will be impaired.

Always use an acid-free detergent for alloy wheels.

Car polish or other abrasive agents should not be used. If the protective coating is damaged, e.g. by stone impact, the damaged area should be repaired immediately.

Underbody sealant

The underside of the vehicle is coated to protect it from corrosion and damage.

The protective coating could be damaged when driving. We recommend that the protective coating under the body and on the running gear should be checked, and reinstated if necessary, before and after the winter season.

We recommend that repair work and additional anti-corrosion work is carried out by your Authorised Service Centre.

WARNING

Do not apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields on the exhaust system. The heat of the exhaust system or the engine could cause them to ignite! This is a fire hazard. ■

Cleaning the engine compartment

Take special care when cleaning the engine compartment.

Anti-corrosion treatment

The engine compartment and the surface of the power unit are given anti-corrosion treatment at the factory.

Good corrosion protection is particularly important in winter when the car is frequently driven on salted roads. To prevent the salt corroding the vehicle, the entire engine compartment should be thoroughly cleaned before and after the salting period.

Your Authorised Service Centre is able to provide the correct cleaning and preserving products and has the necessary equipment. For this reason, we recommend having this work performed by them.

The anti-corrosion protection is usually removed if the engine compartment is cleaned with grease removing solutions, or if you have the engine cleaned. If this job is carried out, you should ensure that all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment are given anti-corrosion treatment afterwards.

WARNING

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 208**
- **Switch off the engine, apply the parking brake firmly and always remove the key from the ignition before you open the bonnet.**
- **Allow the engine to cool before you clean the engine compartment.**
- **Do not clean the underside of vehicle, wheel arches without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts. Failure to comply could result in injury.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Moisture, ice and salt on the brakes may affect braking efficiency. Risk of accident. If possible, avoid sudden braking immediately after washing the vehicle.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan. It is temperature-controlled and could start automatically, even when the key is removed from the ignition!**

For the sake of the environment

Fuel, grease and oil deposits could be removed when the engine is washed. The polluted water must be cleaned in an oil separator. For this reason, engine washing should be carried out only by a qualified workshop or a suitable filling station. ■

Care of the vehicle interior

Cleaning plastic parts and the dash panel

– Use a clean, damp cloth to clean plastic parts and the dash panel.

– If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning product.

WARNING

Never clean the dash panel and surface of the airbag module with cleansers containing solvents. Solvents cause the surface to become porous. If the airbag inflates, disintegrating plastic parts can cause substantial injuries. ▶

Caution

Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material. ■

Cleaning wooden trim*

– Clean the wooden trim with a clean cloth moistened with water.

– If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a *gentle* soap solution.

Caution

Cleaning products which contain solvents will damage the material. ■

Cleaning cloth seat covers and fabric trim

Cloth seat covers and fabric trim on the doors, headlining etc. can be cleaned with a special interior cleanser or with dry foam and a soft brush. ■

Cleaning leather*

Normal cleaning

– Moisten a cotton or woollen cloth with water and wipe over the leather surfaces.

Cleaning stubborn stains

– More stubborn dirt can be removed using a mild soap solution (pure liquid soap; two tablespoons diluted in one litre of water) and a cloth.

– Do not let the water soak through the leather or soak into the seams.

– Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth.

Leather care

– The leather should be treated regularly (about twice a year) with a special leather-care product, which is available from your Authorised Service Centre.

– Apply these products very sparingly.

– Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth.

SEAT does everything possible to preserve the special qualities of leather, as a natural product. Because of the natural properties of the specially selected hides employed, the finished leather has a certain sensitivity to grease and dirt, etc. so a degree of care is required in everyday use and when looking after the leather.

Dust and grit in the pores and seams can scratch and damage the surface. If the vehicle is left standing in the sun for long periods, the leather should be protected against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading. However, slight colour variations in high-quality natural leather are normal.

Caution

● Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.

- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop. ■

Cleaning seat belts

A dirty belt may stop the seat belt working properly.

Keep the seat belts clean and check all seat belts regularly.

Cleaning seat belts

– Carefully pull the dirty seat belt right out and leave it out.

– Clean the dirty seat belts with a *gentle* soap solution.

– Allow the seat belt fabric to dry.

– Do not roll up the seat belt until it is dry.

If large stains form on the belts the belt will not retract correctly into the automatic belt retractor.

WARNING

- **Do not use chemical cleaning agents on the seat belts, as this can impair the strength of the webbing. Ensure that the belts do not come into contact with corrosive fluids.**
- **Check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a specialist workshop.**
- **Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.**

Caution

After cleaning, allow seat belts to dry completely before rolling them up. Otherwise the belt retractors could become damaged. ■

Accessories, parts replacement and modifications

Accessories and parts

Always consult an Authorised Service Centre before purchasing accessories and parts.

Your vehicle is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety.

Before purchasing accessories and parts, and before making technical changes to your car, we recommend that you consult your Authorised Service Centre.

SEAT dealerships will be happy to provide you with the latest information about the use, legal requirements and recommendations from the manufacturer regarding accessories and parts.

We recommend you use only **SEAT Approved Accessories®** and **SEAT Approved Spare Parts®** . This way, SEAT can guarantee that the product in question is suitable, reliable and safe. Authorised Service Centres have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that parts are installed correctly and professionally.

Despite continuous observation of the market, SEAT is not able to assess the reliability, safety and suitability of parts **not approved by SEAT**. For this reason SEAT cannot assume responsibility for any non-genuine parts used, even if these parts have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

Any **equipment subsequently installed** which has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven (e.g. cruise control system or electronically-controlled suspension) must be approved by SEAT for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorisation symbol).

If any **additional electrical components** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself (for instance a refrigerator box, laptop or ventilator fan, etc.), these must bear the **CE** mark (European Union manufacturer conformity declaration).

WARNING

Accessories, for example telephone holders or drink holders, should never be fitted on the covers of, or within the working range of, the airbags. If they are, there is a danger of causing injury if the airbag is triggered in an accident. ■

Modifications

Modifications must always be carried out according to our specifications.

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, other systems may be affected by the faults. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate your vehicle registration documents.

SEAT Authorised Service Centres cannot be held liable for any damage caused by modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

For this reason, we recommend that all work should be performed by an Authorised Service Centre using **genuine and SEAT ® approved parts and accessories**.

WARNING

Incorrectly performed modifications or other work on your vehicle can lead to malfunctions and cause accidents. ■

Roof aerial*

The vehicle may be fitted with a collapsible roof aerial* with antitheft system*, which can be folded backwards, when, for example, going through an automatic carwash.

To fold

Unscrew the aerial rod, tilting it backwards into a horizontal position and then screw it in again.

To return to working position

Continue in the reverse order to that given in the previous instruction. ■

Mobile telephones and two-way radios

You will require an external aerial for mobile phones and two-way radios.

SEAT has approved your vehicle for use with mobile telephones and two-way radios providing the following conditions are observed:

- The correct installation of an external aerial,
- transmitting power of maximum 10 watts.

An external aerial is needed to give the equipment its optimal range.

First consult your Authorised Service Centre if you wish to use a mobile telephone or a two-way radio with a transmitting power in excess of 10 watts. Here you will receive information concerning the technical possibilities for retrofitting this equipment.

Mobile telephones and two-way radios should be fitted only by a qualified workshop, for example an Authorised Service Centre.

WARNING

- **Always concentrate primarily on driving. If you are distracted while driving you could have an accident.**
- **Never attach the telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units or within the range of the airbags, danger of injury if the airbag is triggered.**
- **If you use mobile telephones or two-way radios in the vehicle without an external aerial, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed authorised limits. This also applies to external aerials that have not been correctly installed.**

Caution

Failure to observe the above conditions could cause the electronics to malfunction. The most common causes of faults are:

- no external aerial,
- external aerial incorrectly installed,
- transmitting power in excess of 10 watts.

Note

Please observe the operating instructions of your mobile telephone / two-way radio. ■

Fitting a towing bracket*

It is possible to fit a towing bracket to the rear of the vehicle.

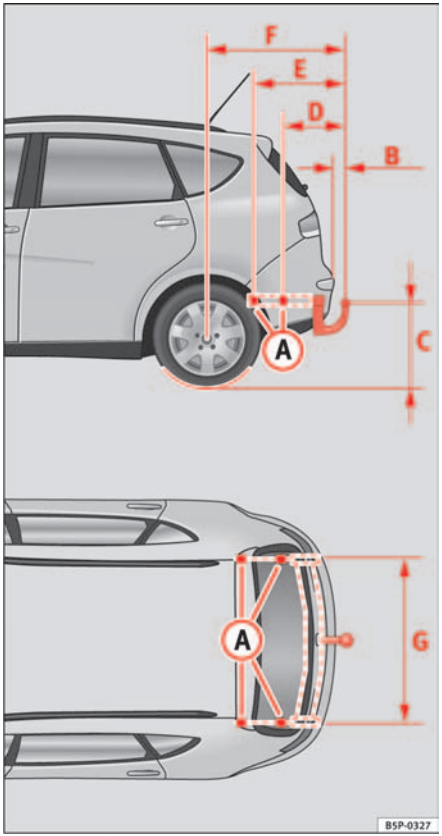

Fig. 155 Attachment points for towing bracket

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the vehicle is purchased, this must be completed according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer.

The attachment points for the towing bracket (A) are underneath the vehicle.

The distance between the centre of the ball coupling and the ground should never be lower than the measurement indicated when the vehicle is fully loaded including the maximum resting weight.

Measurement for securing the towing bracket:

(B) 65 mm (minimum)
(C) 350 mm to 420 mm (fully laden vehicle)
(D) 344 mm
(E) 531 mm
(F) 1044 mm
(G) 1040 mm

Fitting a towing bracket

- Driving with a trailer implies additional work for the vehicle. Therefore, before fitting a towing bracket, please contact an Authorised Service Centre to check whether your cooling system needs modification.
- Observe the legal requirements in your country (e.g. the fitting of a separate warning lamp).
- Certain vehicle components, e.g. the rear bumper must be removed and reinstalled. The towing bracket securing bolts must be tightened using a torque wrench, and an electrical socket must be used to connect to the vehicle's electrical system. This requires specialist knowledge and tools.
- The figures in the illustration show the dimensions and attachment points that must be observed if you are retrofitting a towing bracket.

WARNING

Towing brackets should be fitted by specialists.

WARNING (continued)

- **If the towing bracket is incorrectly installed, there is serious danger of an accident.**
- **For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.**

Caution

- If the electrical socket is incorrectly installed, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system. ■

Checking and refilling levels

Refuelling

The tank flap is released manually. The tank holds approximately 55 litres.

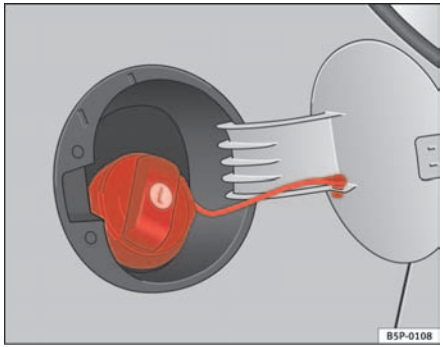

Fig. 156 Tank flap open

Unscrewing the tank cap

– Lift the lid.

– Grip the cap and then insert the key into the lock and rotate 180° to the left.

– Unscrew the cap, turning it anti-clockwise.

Closing the tank cap

– Screw the tank cap to the right, until the point of feeling a “click”.

– Turn the key in the lock, without releasing the cap in the clockwise direction 180°.

– Remove the key and close the flap until it clicks into place. The tank cap is secured with an anti-loss attachment.

The tank flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right.

If the automatic filler nozzle is operated correctly, it will switch itself off as soon as the tank is “full”. Never attempt to fill beyond this point, as this will fill the expansion chamber. Fuel may leak out if ambient conditions are warm.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap, Further notes on fuel can be found.

WARNING

- **Fuel is highly inflammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.**
  - **Never smoke or use any naked flame when filling the fuel tank of the vehicle, or a spare fuel canister, with fuel. This is an explosion hazard.**
  - **Follow legal requirements for the use of spare fuel canisters.**
  - **For safety reasons we do not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. The canister could be damaged in an accident and leak.**
- **If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following points:**
  - **Never fill the spare fuel canister inside the vehicle or on it. An electrostatic charge could build up during filling, causing the fuel fumes to ignite. This may be fatally explosive. Always place the canister on the ground to fill it.**

WARNING (continued)

– **Insert the fuel nozzle into the mouth of the canister as far as possible.**

– **If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filling nozzle must be in contact with the canister during filling. This helps prevent an electrostatic charge building up.**

– **Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment. Fuel vapours are explosive. Danger of death.**

Caution

- Fuel spills should be removed from the paintwork immediately.
- Never run the tank completely dry. An irregular fuel supply could cause misfiring. As a result, unburnt fuel could enter the catalytic converter and cause damage.

For the sake of the environment

Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm. ■

Petrol

Petrol types

The correct petrol types are listed on a sticker inside the fuel tank flap.

Only **unleaded petrol, corresponding to the standard DIN EN 228**, may be used for vehicles with catalytic converters (EN = “European Norm”).

Petrol types are categorised according to their **octane number**, e. g. 91, 95, 98 RON (RON = “research octane number”). You may use petrol with a higher octane number than the one recommended for your engine. However, this has no advantage in terms of fuel consumption and engine power.

Caution

- Even one full tank of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Just one full tank of leaded fuel would seriously impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter. ■

Petrol additives

Petrol additives improve the quality of the petrol.

The quality of the petrol influences running behaviour, performance and service life of the engine. For this reason you should use good quality petrol containing additives. These additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If good quality petrol with additives is not available or engine problems occur, the required additives must be added during refuelling. ■

Diesel

Diesel*

Diesel fuel must correspond to DIN EN 590 (EN = “European standard”). It must have a cetane number (CN) of at least 51. The cetane number indicates the ignition quality of the diesel fuel.

Notes on filling with fuel ⇒ page 205. ■

RME fuel*

Only those vehicles fitted with special equipment (number PR 2G0 for biodiesel use) may use biodiesel corresponding to the standard DIN EN 14214.

The biodiesel fuel must comply with the DIN EN 14.214 (FAME) Standard.

- Biodiesel is a methylester obtained from rapeseed oil.
- DIN is a German abbreviation for “**D**eutsches **I**nstitut für **N**ormung e.V.”, the German standards institute.
- EN means **E**uropean **N**orm.
- FAME is the English abbreviation “**F**atty **A**cid **M**ethyl **E**ster”

If the date sticker of the vehicle includes the number PR 2G0 optional equipment) this means that that vehicle has been prepared for biodiesel use.

Your Authorised Service Centre or automobile association will be able to advise on where you can obtain RME biodiesel fuel.

Your Authorised Service Centre can also be consulted to know if the vehicle has been prepared for biodiesel use.

Things to note about RME fuel (biodiesel)

- The performance of a vehicle using biodiesel maybe somewhat reduced.
- Fuel consumption of a vehicle using biodiesel may be slightly higher.
- RME fuel can be used in winter at temperatures down to approx. -10°C.
- At outside temperatures below -10°C, we recommend using winter diesel fuel.

Caution

- RME fuel can damage the fuel system in vehicles that are not suitably adjusted.
- If you decide to use biodiesel in your vehicle, please use only RME fuel which is DIN E 14,214 compliant.
- If you use biodiesel that does not meet the required standard, the fuel filter could become clogged.

Note

- In case of low exterior temperatures and a biodiesel fuel percentage of higher than 50%, an increase in gas emission may occur during operation of the independent heating.
- The fuel filter may become clogged when fuel is changed to biodiesel. For this reason, we recommend that, about every 300 or 400 km, following a fuel change, also change the fuel filter. Also note the instructions in the inspection and maintenance plan.
- If the vehicle is to remain parked for more than about two weeks, we recommend filling the fuel tank with biodiesel and driving about 50 km in order to avoid damage to the injection system. ■

Winter driving

Diesel can thicken in winter.

Winter-grade diesel

When using “summer-grade diesel fuel”, difficulties may be experienced at sub-zero temperatures because the fuel thickens due to wax separation. For this reason, “winter-grade diesel fuel” is available in some countries during the cold months. It can be used at temperatures as low as -22°C.

In countries with different climatic conditions the diesel fuel sold generally has different temperature characteristics. Check with an Authorised Service Centre or filling stations in the country concerned regarding the type of diesel fuels available.

Filter pre-heater

Your vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter pre-heater, making it well equipped for operation in winter. This ensures that the fuel system remains operational to approx. -24°C, provided you use winter-grade diesel which is safe to -15°C .

However, if the fuel has waxed to such an extent that the engine will not start at temperatures of under -24°C, simply place the vehicle in a warm place for a while.

Caution

Do not mix fuel additives (“thinners”, or similar additives) with diesel fuel. ■

Working in the engine compartment

Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

Before starting any work on the engine or in the engine compartment:

1. Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
2. Apply the handbrake.
3. Move the gear stick to neutral or the selector lever to position P.
4. Wait for the engine to cool down.
5. Keep children away from the vehicle.
6. Raise the bonnet ⇒ page 210.

You should not do any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the jobs and have the correct tools! Have the work carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain.

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. coolant, engine oil, spark plugs and batteries, are being constantly developed. SEAT provides a constant flow of information to the Authorised Service Centres concerning modifications. For this reason we recommend that you have service fluids and consumables replaced by an Authorised Service Centre. Please observe the relevant instructions ⇒ page 201. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area. ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

All work on the engine or in the engine compartment, e.g. checking and refilling fluids, involves the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire.

- Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Otherwise, there is a risk of sustaining burns. Wait until no more steam or coolant is emitted, then allow the engine to cool before carefully opening the bonnet.
- Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
- Apply the handbrake and move the gear stick to neutral or selector lever to position P.
- Keep children away from the vehicle.
- Never touch hot engine parts. There is a risk of burns.
- Never spill liquids on a hot engine or on a hot exhaust gas system. This is a fire hazard.
- Avoid causing short-circuits in the electrical system, particularly at the points where the jump leads are attached ⇒ page 259. The battery could explode.
- Never touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and could start automatically, even when the engine has been switched off and the key removed from the ignition!
- Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. If the coolant is hot, the cooling system will be pressurised!
- Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
- Always make sure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the engine compartment.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, you must use suitable stands additionally to support the vehicle, there is a risk of accident!. A hydraulic jack is insufficient for securing the vehicle and there is a risk of injury.

WARNING (continued)

- If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. You should also observe the following points:
  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
  - Ensure that jewellery, loose clothing and long hair do not get trapped in rotating engine parts. Danger of death. Before starting any work remove jewellery, tie back and cover hair, and wear tight-fitting clothes.
  - Always think carefully about pressing the accelerator if a gear is engaged in either an automatic or manual gearbox. The vehicle could move, even if the handbrake is applied. Danger of death.
- If work has to be carried out on the fuel system or on electrical components, you must observe the following safety notes in addition to the above warnings:
  - Always disconnect the battery. The vehicle must be unlocked when this is done, otherwise the alarm will be triggered.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near naked flames.
  - Always have a fire extinguisher on hand.

Caution

When changing or topping up service fluids, make absolutely certain that you fill the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Failure to observe this point will result in serious malfunctions and engine damage!

For the sake of the environment

Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. For this reason you should make regular checks on the ground underneath your vehicle. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected in a qualified workshop. ■

Opening the bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.

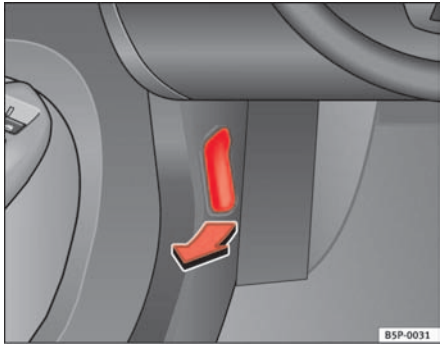

Fig. 157 Detail of the foot well: The release lever for the bonnet is located in the driver side foot well

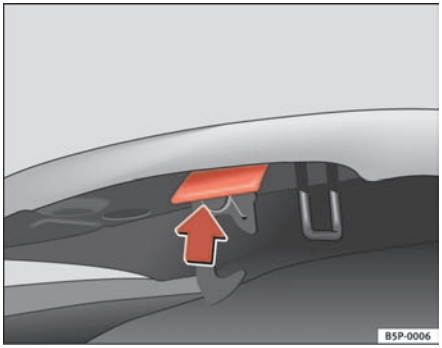

Fig. 158 Arrester hook for bonnet.

Before opening the bonnet ensure that the windscreen wipers are in rest position.

– To release the bonnet, pull the lever under the dashboard ⇒ fig. 157 in the direction indicated (arrow). The bonnet will be released by a spring action ⇒ ⚠.

– Lift the bonnet using the release lever (arrow) and open the bonnet.

– Release the bonnet stay and secure it in fixture designed for this in the bonnet.

⚠ WARNING

Hot coolant can scald!

- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam, smoke or coolant escaping from the engine compartment.**

WARNING (continued)

- **Wait until no more steam, smoke or coolant is emitted from the bonnet, then carefully open the bonnet.**
- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 208.** ■

Closing the bonnet

– Raise the bonnet slightly.

– Release the bonnet stay and replace it in its support.

– At a height of about 30 cm let it fall so it is locked.

If the bonnet does not close, do not press downwards. Open it once more and let it fall as before.

WARNING

If the bonnet is not closed properly, it could open while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. Risk of accident.

- **After closing the bonnet, always check that it is properly secured. The bonnet must be flush with the surrounding body panels.**
- **If you notice that the bonnet latch is not secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly. Risk of accident.** ■

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform with exact specifications.

Specifications

The engine comes with a special, high quality, multi grade oil that can be used in all seasons of the year except for those regions affected by extreme cold.

As the use of high quality oil is essential for the correct operation of the engine and its long useful life, when topping up or replacement is necessary use only those oils that conform to the requirements of the VW standards.

If it is not possible to find oil conforming to the VW standards then oil conforming to the ACEA or API standards with an appropriate viscosity at atmospheric temperature should be used instead. The use of this type of oil may have some repercussions on the performance of the engine for example, long starting time, increased consumption and a higher emission level.

If a top up is required then different oils may be mixed as long as they all conform to the VW standards.

The specifications (VW standards) set out in the following page should appear on the container of the service oil; the container will display together the different standards for petrol and diesel engines, the oil can be used for both types of engines. ■

Oil properties

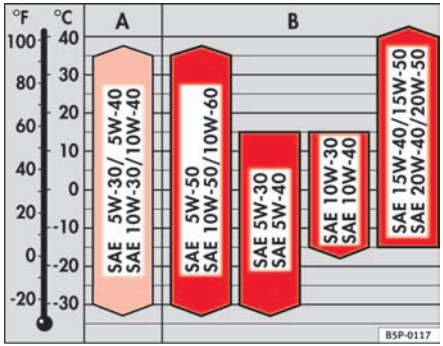

Fig. 159 Types of oil according to temperature

Viscosity

The viscosity class of the oil is selected according to the diagram.

When the ambient temperature falls outside the limits of the scale for a short period, an oil change is not required.

Engine type	Specification
Petrol	VW 501 01/ VW 502 00/ VW 504 00
Diesel	VW 505 00/ VW 505 01/ VW 507 00/ VW 506 01
Diesel Injector Pump [a)]	VW 505 01/ VW 507 00/ VW 506 01
Diesel Injector Pump Motor 118 kW[a)]	VW 506 01/ VW 507 00
Diesel Engines with Particulate filter (DPF)[a)]	VW 507 00

[a)] Only use recommended oils, otherwise you may damage the engine.

Mono-grade oil

Single grade oils are generally not suitable for all year round use, due to ranges of viscosity[20)].

These oils are only useful in a climate that is constantly very cold or very warm.

Engine oil additives

No type of additive should be mixed with the engine oil. The deterioration caused by these additives is not covered by the warranty.

[20)] Viscosity: Ability to flow

Note

Before a long trip, we recommend finding an engine oil that conforms to the corresponding VW specifications and keeping it in the vehicle. This way, the correct engine oil will always be available for a top-up if needed. ■

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil dipstick indicates the level of the oil.

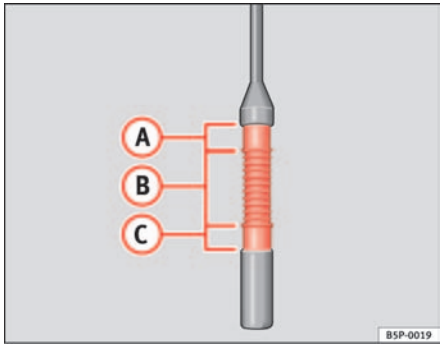

Fig. 160 Engine oil dipstick.

Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment" on page 208 .

– Park the vehicle on an even surface.

– After stopping the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the sump.

– Raise the bonnet ⇒ page 210.

– Pull out the dipstick.

– Wipe the dipstick with a cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.

– Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level ⇒ fig. 160.

– Replace the dipstick, pushing it in as far as it will go.

The position of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 270.

If the oil level is in area ⇒ fig. 160 (A), do not top up with oil.

If the oil level is in area (B), you may top up with oil (approx. 0,5 l).

If the oil level is in area (C), you must top up with oil (approx. 1,0 l).

It is normal for the engine to consume a certain amount of oil. Consumption can be up to 1.0 litres per 1,000 km. For this reason the engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when filling the tank and before a journey.

When the engine is working hard, for instance during sustained high-speed motorway cruising in summer, when towing a trailer or climbing on mountain passes, the oil level should preferably be kept within area (A) and not above this.

⚠ WARNING

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 208**

Caution

If the oil level is above the area (A) do not start the engine. This could result in damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Contact an Authorised Service Centre. ■

Topping up engine oil

Top up gradually with small quantities of oil.

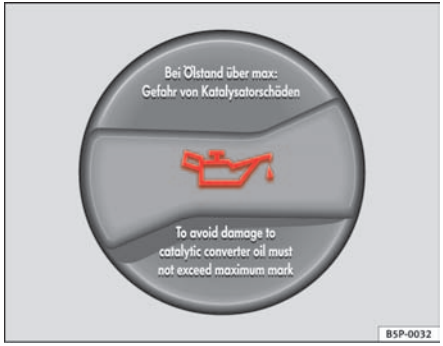

Fig. 161 In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap

Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment" on page 208 .

– Unscrew cap from oil filler opening ⇒ fig. 161.

– Top-up oil in small amounts, using the correct oil.

– To avoid over-filling with engine oil, you should top-up using small quantities, wait a while and check the oil level before adding any more oil.

– As soon as the oil level is in area (B), carefully close the cap.

The position of the oil filler opening is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 270.

Engine oil specification ⇒ page 211.

WARNING

Oil is highly inflammable! Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up.

Caution

If the oil level is above the area (A) do not start the engine. This could result in damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Contact a qualified workshop.

For the sake of the environment

The oil level must never be above area (A). Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and escape into the atmosphere via the exhaust system. ■

Changing engine oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals given in the service schedule.

We recommend that you have the engine oil changed by an Authorised Service Centre.

The two different oil change intervals are shown in the ⇒ Booklet “Service schedule”.

WARNING

Only change the oil yourself if you have the specialist knowledge required!

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 208, “Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment” .**
- **Wait for the engine to cool down. Hot oil may cause burn injuries.**
- **Wear eye protection to avoid injuries caused by splashes of oil.**
- **When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, keep your arm horizontal to help prevent oil from running down your arm.**
- **Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.**
- **Engine oil is poisonous! Used oil must be stored in a safe place out of the reach of children until it is disposed of.**

Caution

No additives should be used with engine oil. This could result in engine damage. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Because of the disposal problems, the necessary special tools and specialist knowledge required, we recommend that you have the engine oil and filter changed by an Authorised Service Centre.
- Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
- Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It has to be large enough to hold all the engine oil ■

Coolant

Coolant specifications

Coolant is a mixture of water and at least 40% coolant additive.

The cooling system must be filled with a mixture of water and at least 40 % of our coolant additive G 12+ or an additive with the specification TT-VW 774 F (it is dyed purple). This mixture gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. It also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

The concentration of coolant must *always* be at least 40% - even if frost protection is not required.

If greater frost protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of the antifreeze additive G 12+ can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additives should not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the frost protection. It would also reduce the cooling effect. A mixture with 60% coolant additive will give frost protection to approx. -40°C. ▶

WARNING

- **The coolant additive is toxic. There is a toxic risk. Always keep the coolant additive in the original container which should be stored out of the reach of children. The same applies to coolant that you have drained off.**
- **The coolant additive G 12+ must be added in sufficient quantities to provide anti-freeze protection at the coldest ambient temperatures that can be expected. At extremely cold ambient temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to breakdown. As the heater would also not work in this situation, there is a risk of suffering exposure!**

Caution

- Other additives may give considerably inferior corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion in the cooling system can lead to a loss of coolant, causing serious damage to the engine.
- The coolant additive G 12+ (purple) can be mixed with the additive G 12 (red) or G 11. Never mix G12 (red colour) with G 11. ■

Checking the coolant level and topping up

The correct coolant level is important for fault-free functioning of the engine cooling system.

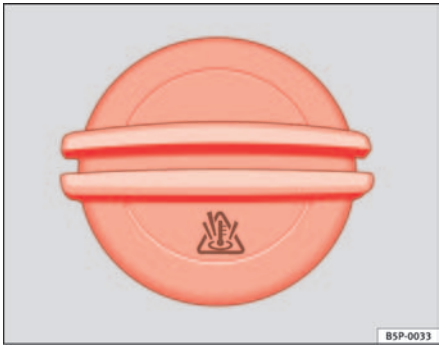

Fig. 162 In the engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank cap

Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment" on page 208 .

Opening the coolant expansion tank

– Switch off the engine and allow it to cool.

– To prevent scalding, cover the cap on the expansion tank with a thick cloth and carefully unscrew the cap ⇒ ⚠ .

Checking coolant level

– Look into the open coolant expansion tank and read the coolant level. ▶

– If the level is underneath the “MIN” mark, top up with coolant.

Topping up coolant

– Only use **new** coolant.

– Do not fill above the “MAX” mark.

Closing the coolant expansion tank

– Screw the cap on again *tightly*.

The position of the coolant expansion reservoir is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 270.

Make sure that the coolant meets the required specifications ⇒ page 215. Do not use a different type of additive if coolant additive G 12+ is not available. In this case use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive ⇒ page 215.

Always top up with *new* coolant.

Do not fill above the “MAX” mark. Otherwise the excess coolant will be forced out of the cooling system when the engine is hot.

The coolant additive G 12+ (dyed purple) may be mixed with G 12 (dyed red) and also with G 11.

WARNING

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 208**

WARNING (continued)

- **When the engine is warm or hot, the cooling system is pressurised! Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. This is a burn injury risk.**

Caution

- When mixed with other additives the colour of G 12 will change to brown. If this occurs you should have the coolant changed immediately. Failure to do so will result in engine damage!
- If a lot of coolant has been lost, wait for the engine to *cool down* before putting in cold coolant. This avoids damaging the engine. Large coolant losses are an indication of leaks in the cooling system. See a specialised workshop immediately and have the cooling system checked. Otherwise, there is a risk of engine damage. ■

Washer fluid and windscreen wiper blades

Topping up washer fluid

The water for cleaning the windscreen should always be mixed with washer fluid.

Fig. 163 In the engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer fluid reservoir.

The **windscreen washer** and the **headlight washing system** are supplied with fluid from the windscreen washer fluid container in the engine compartment.

The reservoir is located on the right-hand side of the engine compartment.

Plain water is not enough to clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend that you always add a product to the windscreen washer fluid. Approved windscreen cleaning products exist on the market with high detergent and anti-freeze properties, these may be added all-year-round. Please follow the dilution instructions on the packaging.

WARNING

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 208**

Caution

- Never put radiator anti-freeze or other additives into the windscreen washer fluid.
- Always use approved windscreen cleansing products diluted as per instructions. If you use other washer fluids or soap solutions, the tiny holes in the fan-shaped nozzles could become blocked. ■

Changing windscreen wiper blades

If the windscreen wiper blades are in perfect condition, you will benefit from an improved visibility. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately.

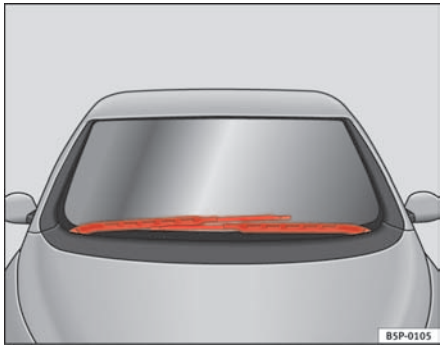

Fig. 164 Windscreen wipers in the service position

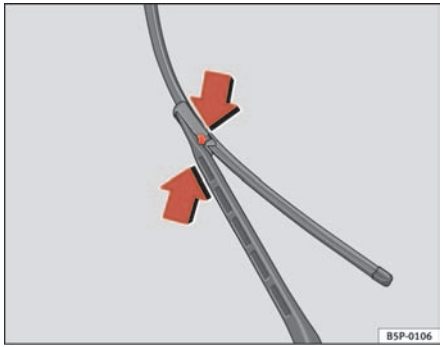

Fig. 165 Changing the front wiper blades

To change the blades it is necessary to change the rest position of the wipers to the service position.

Service position (for changing wiper blades)

– Ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen.

– Turn ignition on and off and then (before approx. 8 seconds have elapsed), move the windscreen wiper lever to the intermittent wipe position. The windscreen wipers will move to the service position.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

– Lift the wiper arm away from the windscreen.

– Push the side buttons, free the blade and pull in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 165.

Fitting the wiper blade

– Insert a blade of identical length and design into the wiper arm.

– Slide the blade until it clicks into position.

– Push the wiper arms back against the windscreen.

The windscreen wiper arms return to their original position when the ignition is turned on and the windscreen wiper lever is operated, or when driving faster than 6 km/h.

If the **windscreen wipers smear**, they should be replaced if they are damaged, or cleaned if they are soiled.

If this does not produce the desired results, the setting angle of the windscreen wiper arms might be incorrect. They should be checked by a qualified workshop and corrected if necessary.

WARNING

Do not drive unless you have good visibility through all windows!

- **Clean the windscreen wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **The wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.**

Caution

- Damaged or dirty windscreen wipers could scratch the windscreen.
- Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows. This could damage the windscreen wiper blades.
- Never move the windscreen wiper or windscreen wiper arm manually. This could cause damage.
- Do not pull the windscreen wipers forward unless they are in the service position. Otherwise the bonnet could be damaged.

Note

- The wiper arms can be moved to the service position only when the bonnet is properly closed. ■

Changing the rear wiper blade

A good rear wiper blade is essential for clear rear vision. Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately.

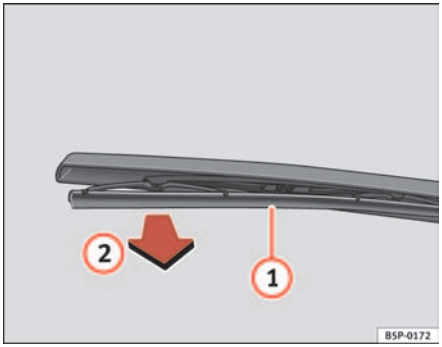

Fig. 166 Changing the rear window wiper blade

Removing the wiper blade

– Lift the wiper arm away from the glass ⇒ fig. 166.

– Unclip the wiper blade (1) and pull (2) ⇒ fig. 166.

Fitting the wiper blade

– With one hand, hold the top end of the wiper arm.

– With the other hand, press the wiper blade into the retainer.

Check the condition of the wiper blade regularly. Change as required.

If the **windscreen wiper scrapes**, it should be replaced if damaged, or cleaned if soiled. ▶

If this is not sufficient, refer to a qualified workshop.

WARNING

Do not drive unless you have good visibility through all windows!

- **Clean the windscreen wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **The wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.**

Caution

- A damaged or dirty window wiper could scratch the rear window.
- Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the window.
- Never move the windscreen wiper by hand. This could cause damage. ■

Brake fluid

Checking the brake fluid level

The brake fluid is checked at the intervals given in the service schedule.

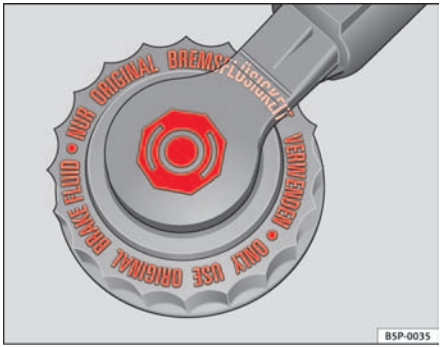

Fig. 167 In the engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir cover

– Read the fluid level at the transparent brake fluid reservoir. It should always be between the “MIN” and “MAX” marks.

The position of the brake fluid reservoir is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 270. The brake fluid reservoir has a black and yellow cap.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads are automatically adjusted as they wear. ▶

However, if the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the "MIN" mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. A display on the instrument panel will warn you if the brake fluid level is too low ⇒ page 72.

WARNING

Before opening the bonnet to check the brake fluid level, read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 208. ■

Changing the brake fluid

The brake fluid must be renewed every two years.

We recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by an Authorised Service Centre.

Before opening the bonnet, please read and follow the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in "Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment" on page 208 in "Working in the engine compartment".

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. In the course of time, it will absorb water from the ambient air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, the brake system could corrode. This also considerably reduces the boiling point of the brake fluid. Heavy use of the brakes may then cause a vapour lock which could impair the braking effect.

For this reason the brake fluid must be renewed every two years.

It is important that you use only use brake fluid compliant with the US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4. We recommend the use of Genuine SEAT brake fluid.

WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous. Old brake fluid impairs the braking effect.

WARNING (continued)

- **Before opening the bonnet to check the brake fluid level, read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 208.**
- **Brake fluid should be stored in the closed original container in a safe place out of reach of children. There is a toxic risk.**
- **Have the brake fluid changed every two years at the latest. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. This would seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes and the safety of the vehicle. This may cause an accident.**

Caution

Brake fluid could damage the paintwork. Wipe off any brake fluid from the paintwork immediately.

For the sake of the environment

Brake fluid must be drained and disposed of in the proper manner observing environmental regulations. ■

Battery

Warnings on handling the battery

	Wear eye protection
	Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. Wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	Fires, sparks, naked lights and smoking are prohibited!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge.
	Keep children away from acid and batteries!

WARNING

Always be aware of the danger of injury and chemical burns as well as the risk of accident or fire when working on the battery and the electrical system:

- **Wear eye protection. Protect your eyes, skin and clothing from acid and particles containing lead.**
- **Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. Wear protective gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the batteries. This could spill acid through the vents. Rinse battery acid from eyes immediately for several minutes with clear water. Then seek medical care immediately. Neutralize any acid splashes on the skin or clothing with a soapy solution, and rinse off with plenty of water. If acid is swallowed by mistake, consult a doctor immediately.**
- **Fires, sparks, naked lights and smoking are prohibited. When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid causing sparks and electrostatic**

WARNING (continued)

charge. Never short the battery terminals. High-energy sparks can cause injury.

- **A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge. The batteries should be charged in a well-ventilated room only.**
- **Keep children away from acid and batteries.**
- **Before working on the electrical system, you must switch off the engine, the ignition and all consumers. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. When a light bulb is changed, you need only switch off the light.**
- **Deactivate the anti-theft alarm by unlocking the vehicle before you disconnect the battery! The alarm will otherwise be triggered.**
- **When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle electrical system, disconnect first the negative cable and then the positive cable.**
- **Switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting the battery. Reconnect first the positive cable and then the negative cable. Never reverse the polarity of the connections. This could cause an electrical fire.**
- **Never charge a frozen battery, or one which has thawed. This could result in explosions and chemical burns. Always replace a battery that has frozen. A flat battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C.**
- **Ensure that the vent hose is always connected to the battery.**
- **Never use a defective battery. This may be fatally explosive. Replace a damaged battery immediately.**

Caution

- Never disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.
- Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight over a long period of time, as the intense ultraviolet radiation can damage the battery housing.

- If the vehicle is left standing in cold conditions for a long period, protect the battery from frost. If it “freezes” it will be damaged. ■

Checking the electrolyte level

The electrolyte level should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older batteries.

– Open the bonnet and open the battery cover at the front ⇒ ⚠ in “Safety instructions on working in the engine compartment” on page 208 ⇒ ⚠ in “Warnings on handling the battery” on page 223.

– Check the colour display in the "magic eye" on the top of the battery.

– If there are air bubbles in the window, tap the window gently until they disperse.

The position of the battery is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ page 270.

The round window (“magic eye”) on the top of the battery changes colour, depending on the charge level and electrolyte level of the battery.

If the colour in the window is **colourless or bright yellow**, the electrolyte level of the battery is too low. Have the battery checked by a qualified workshop.

The colours green and black are used by the workshops for diagnostic purposes. ■

Charging and changing the vehicle battery

The battery is maintenance-free and is checked during the inspection service. All work on the vehicle battery requires specialist knowledge.

If you often drive short distances or if the vehicle is not driven for long periods, the battery should be checked by a qualified workshop between the scheduled services.

If the battery has discharged and you have problems starting the vehicle, the battery might be damaged. If this happens, we recommend you have the vehicle battery checked by an Authorised Service Centre where it will be recharged or replaced.

Charging the battery

The vehicle battery should be charged by a qualified workshop only, as batteries using special technology have been installed and they must be charged in a controlled environment.

Replacing a vehicle battery

The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features.

Genuine SEAT batteries fulfil the maintenance, performance and safety specifications of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **We recommend you use only maintenance-free or cycle free leak-proof batteries that comply with the standards T 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. This standard applies as of 2001.**
- **Before starting any work on the batteries, you must read and observe the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in “Warnings on handling the battery” on page 223.**

For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of appropriately and must not be disposed of with ordinary household waste. ■

Wheels

General notes

Avoiding damage

– If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.

– Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.

– Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign objects embedded in the treads.

Storing tyres

– Mark tyres when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you will be able to install them correctly when you replace them.

– When removed, the wheels and/or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark location.

– Store tyres in a vertical position if they are not fitted on wheel rims.

New tyres

New tyres have to be run in ⇒ page 183.

The tread depth of new tyres may vary, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. The tyres should be checked immediately by an Authorised Service Centre.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. Always observe the direction of rotation indicated when fitting the wheel. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

WARNING

- **New tyres do not have maximum grip in the first 500 km. Drive particularly carefully to avoid risk of accident.**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and check the tyres for damage.** ■

Checking tyre pressure

The correct tyre pressure can be seen on the sticker on the inside of the tank flap.

1. Read the required tyre inflation pressure from the sticker. The values refer to Summer tyres. For Winter tyres, you must add 0.2 bar to the values given on the sticker.
2. The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
3. Adjust the tyre pressure to the load you are carrying.

Tyre pressure

The correct tyre pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and before starting a journey.

WARNING

A tyre can easily burst if the pressure is too low, causing an accident!

- **At continuously high speeds, a tyre with insufficient pressure flexes more. In this way it becomes too hot, and this can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out. Always observe the recommended tyre pressures.**
- **If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well. Risk of accident!**

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption. ■

Tyre service life

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style and fitting.

Fig. 168 Tyre tread wear indicators

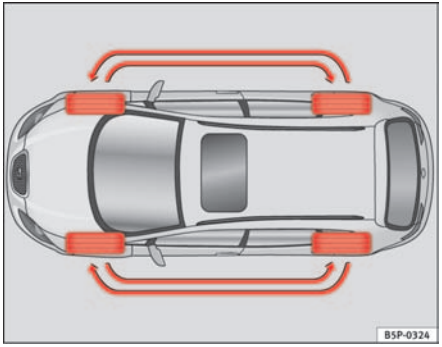

Fig. 169 Changing wheels

Wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high ⇒ page 226, fig. 168 "tread wear indicators" running across the tread. Depending on the make, there will be six to eight of them evenly spaced around the tyre. Markings on the tyre sidewall (for instance the letters "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators. The minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators). Worn tyres must be replaced. Different figures may apply in export countries ⇒ ⚠.

Tyre pressure

Incorrect tyre pressure causes premature wear and could cause tyre blow-out. For this reason, the tyre pressure should be checked at least once per month ⇒ page 226.

Driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.

Changing wheels around

If the front tyres are worn considerably more than the rear ones it is advisable to change them around as shown ⇒ page 226, fig. 169. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

Wheel balance

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various factors encountered in normal driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in steering vibration.

Unbalanced wheels should be rebalanced, as they otherwise cause excessive wear on steering, suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If tyres show excessive wear, you should have the wheel alignment checked by an Authorised Service Centre.

⚠ WARNING

There is a serious danger of accidents if a tyre bursts during driving!

- **The tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Failure to do so could result in an accident. Worn tyres do not grip well at high speeds on wet roads. There is also a greater risk of "aquaplaning".**
- **At continuously high speeds, a tyre with insufficient pressure flexes more. This causes it to overheat. This can cause tread separation and tyre blow-out. Risk of accident. Always observe the recommended tyre pressures.**
- **If tyres show excessive wear, you should have the running gear checked by an Authorised Service Centre.**
- **Keep chemicals such as oil, fuel and brake fluid away from tyres.**
- **Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately!**

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption. ■

Puncture-proof tyres

Puncture-proof tyres will usually allow the vehicle to continue even when one of the tyres has a puncture.

Vehicles that are factory-fitted with puncture proof tyres[21)] indicate on the instrument panel when there is a loss of tyre pressure. ▶

[21)] According to the version and the country

Driving with puncture-proof tyres (emergency driving)

– Leave the ESP/TCS (electric stability program) on, or turn it on ⇒ page 181.

– Drive carefully and at moderate speed (80km/h maximum).

– Avoid sudden manoeuvers and turns.

– Avoid driving over obstacles (for example, kerbs) or potholes.

– Pay attention when the ESP/TCS is frequently used, if the tyres smoke or there is a smell of rubber, or if the vehicle vibrates or there are rattling noises. If any of these circumstances appear, stop the vehicle.

Puncture-proof tyres have a special marking on the side with the following denominations: “DSST”, “Eufonia”, “RFT”, “ROF”, “RSC”, “SSR” o “ZP”.

The side walls of these tyres are reinforced. When the tyres lose air they are supported by the sides (emergency driving).

The instrument panel warns of the loss of air pressure in the tyre. It is possible to travel at least another 80 km, and in favourable conditions (eg, a light load) even more.

The damaged tyre should be replaced as soon as possible. The rim should be checked in a specialized workshop to detect possible damage, and replaced if required. We recommend that you contact your technical service. If there is more than one tyre in emergency condition, the distance that can be travelled is reduced.

Starting emergency driving

Once the tyre pressure loss warning light is on in the instrument panel, at least one of the tyres is in emergency condition ⇒ ⚠.

Ending emergency driving

Do not drive on if:

- - smoke is coming from one of the tyres,
- - there is a smell of rubber,
- - the vehicle vibrates,
- - there is a rattling noise.

WARNING

When driving in emergency conditions, the driving quality of the vehicle is considerably impaired.

- **Drive carefully and at moderate speed (80km/h maximum).**
- **Avoid sharp turns and rapid manoeuvres, and brake earlier than usual.**
- **Avoid driving over obstacles (for example, kerbs) or potholes.**
- **One or more tyres in emergency conditions reduces the driving performance and increases the risk of accident.**

Note

- Puncture-proof tyres will not “deflate” when air pressure is lost because the side walls will give support The defects in the tyre are therfore not noticeable when they are visually inspected.
- Do not fit chains onto front wheels that are in emergency condition ■

New tyres and wheels

New tyres and wheels have to be run-in.

The tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle’s design. The tyres and rims approved by SEAT are specially matched to the characteristics ▶

of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling ⇒ ⚠.

Tyres should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together). A knowledge of tyre designations makes it easier to choose the correct tyres. Radial tyres have the tyre designations marked on the sidewall, for example:

195/65 R15 91T

This contains the following information:

195 Tyre width in mm
65 Height/width ratio in %
R Tyre construction: **R**adial
15 Rim diameter in inches
91 Load rating code
T Speed rating

The tyres could also have the following information:

- A direction of rotation symbol
- "Reinforced" denotes heavy-duty tyres.

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the inner side of the wheel).

"DOT ... 1103 ..." means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 11th week of 2003.

We recommend that work on tyres and wheels is carried out by an Authorised Service Centre. They are familiar with the procedure and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tyres.

Any Authorised Service Centre has full information on the technical requirements when installing or changing tyres, wheels or wheel trims.

WARNING

- **We recommend that you use only wheels and tyres that have been approved by SEAT for your model. Failure to do so could impair vehicle handling. Risk of accident.**
- **Avoid running the vehicle on tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.**
- **Never use old tyres or those with an unknown "history of use".**
- **If wheel trims are retrofitted, you must ensure that the flow of air to the brakes is not restricted. This could cause them to overheat.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.**

For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of according to the laws in the country concerned.

Note

- For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same model. The use of wheels or tyres which have not been approved by SEAT for use with your model may invalidate the vehicle's type approval for use on public roads.
- If the spare tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the vehicle - for example with winter tyres - you should only use the spare tyre for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as possible. ■

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be tightened to the correct torque.

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the rims. If different wheel rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you may not use wheel bolts from a different car - even if it is the same model ⇒ page 201.

WARNING

If the wheel bolts are not tightened correctly, the wheel could become loose while driving. Risk of accident.

- **The wheel bolts must be clean and turn easily. Never apply grease or oil to them.**
- **Use only wheel bolts which belong to the wheel.**
- **If the prescribed torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen whilst the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads could be damaged.**

Caution

The prescribed torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is 120 Nm. ■

Winter tyres

Winter tyres will improve the vehicles handling on snow and ice.

In winter conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the vehicles handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow.

Winter tyres must be inflated to a **pressure** 0.2 bar higher than the pressures specified for summer tyres (see sticker on tank flap).

Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.

Information on permitted **winter tyre sizes** can be found in the vehicle's registration documents. Use only radial winter tyres. All tyre sizes listed in the vehicle documentation also apply to winter tyres.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm.

The speed rating code ⇒ page 228, "New tyres and wheels" determines the following **speed limits**: ⇒ ⚠

Q max. 160 km/h
S max. 180 km/h
T max. 190 km/h
H max. 210 km/h

In some countries, vehicles which can exceed the speed rating of the fitted tyre must have an appropriate sticker in the driver's field of view. These stickers are available from your Authorised Service Centre. The legal requirements of each country must be followed.

Do not have winter tyres fitted for unnecessarily long periods. Vehicles with summer tyres handle better when the roads are free of snow and ice.

If you have a flat tyre, please refer to the notes on the spare wheel ⇒ page 228, "New tyres and wheels". ▶

WARNING

The maximum speed for the winter tyres must not be exceeded. Otherwise, this could lead to tyre damage and thus, an accident risk.

For the sake of the environment

Fit your summer tyres in good time. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption. ■

Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the front wheels, and only to certain tyre sizes ⇒ page 268.

Snow chains must have fine-pitch links which do not protrude more that 9 mm, including tension device.

Remove wheel hub covers and trim rings before fitting snow chains. For safety reasons cover caps, available in any Authorised Service Centre, must then be fitted over the wheel bolts.

WARNING

Observe the fitting instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.

Caution

You must remove the snow chains to drive on roads which are free of snow. Otherwise they will impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.

Note

In some countries, the speed limit for using snow chains is 50 km/h. The legal requirements of the country should be followed. ■

If and when

Tools, tyre repair kit and spare wheel

Vehicle Tools

The vehicle onboard tools are located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment .

– Lift the cover of the luggage compartment, by pulling it up with a finger in the fitting.

– Take the onboard tools out of the vehicle.

The tool kit includes:

- Jack*
- Hook for removing wheel covers* or hub caps*
- Box spanner for wheel bolts*
- Reversible screwdriver with handle (including hexagonal interior) for the wheel bolts. The screwdriver is a combination tool.
- Towing eye
- Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts*

Some of the items listed are only provided on certain models / model years, or are optional extras.

WARNING

- **Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is impossible to tighten the bolts with the torque required, risk of accident.**

WARNING (continued)

- **The jack supplied by the factory is only designed for changing wheels on this model. On no account attempt to use it for lifting heavier vehicles or other loads, risk of injury.**
- **Use the jack* only on firm, level ground.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack, risk of accident.**
- **If work is to be carried out underneath the vehicle, this must be secured by suitable stands. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury.** ■

Compact temporary spare wheel*

The reduced size spare wheel (emergency wheel for vehicles without the anti-puncture kit) should only be used when there is no alternative.

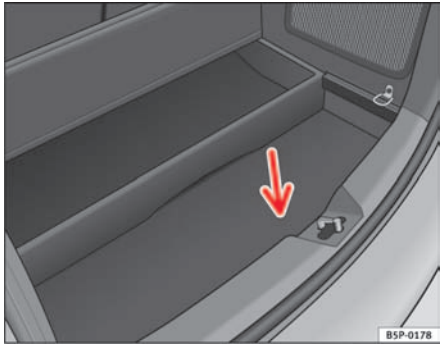

Fig. 170 Luggage compartment. Access to the spare wheel

The temporary spare wheel is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment and is attached by a thumbnut.

How to use the compact temporary spare wheel

Should you ever have a punctured tyre, the compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use until you can reach a workshop. The standard-size road wheel should be replaced as soon as possible.

Please note the following restrictions when using the compact temporary spare wheel. This spare wheel has been specially designed for your vehicle, thus, it cannot be changed with the spare wheel from another vehicle.

No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyre) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel rim.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must **not** be used on the compact temporary spare wheel.

If you should have a puncture on one of the *front wheels* when using snow chains, fit the compact temporary spare in place of one of the rear wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the rear and use this wheel to replace the punctured front wheel.

WARNING

- **The tyre pressures must be checked and corrected as soon as possible. The tyre pressure for the spare wheel is 4.2 bar. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**
- **Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Higher speeds can cause an accident.**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering, risk of accident.**
- **Never use two or more compact spare tyres at the same time, risk of accident.**
- **No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyre) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel rim.** ■

Tyre repair kit

The tyre repair kit (for vehicles not including a spare wheel) is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Tyre Mobility System “Tyre repair kit”.

The tyre repair kit consists of a container with sealing compound to repair the puncture and a **compressor** to generate the required tyre pressure. The kit will reliably seal punctures up to a size of about 4 mm caused by the penetration of a foreign body into the tyre. ▶

Note

- Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound. ■

Wheel change

Preparation work

What you must do before changing a wheel.

– If you have a flat tyre or puncture, park the vehicle as far away from the flow of traffic as possible. Choose a location that is as level as possible.

– All passengers should leave the vehicle. They should wait in a safe area (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

– Switch off the engine. Switch on the hazard warning lights.

– Apply the **handbrake** firmly.

– Engage the **first gear**, or put the selector lever to position **P** for those vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

– If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.

– Take the **vehicle tools** and the **spare wheel** out of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Put the hazard warning lights on and place the warning triangle in position. This is for your own safety and also warns other road users.

Caution

If you have to change the tyre on a gradient, block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed by placing a stone or similar object under it to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Note

Please observe legal requirements when doing so. ■

Changing a wheel

Change the wheel as described below

– Pull off the **hub cap**. Also refer to ⇒ page 235.

– Slacken the **wheel bolts.**

– **Raise** the car with the jack in the corresponding zone.

– **Take off** the wheel and then **put on** the spare wheel.

– **Lower** the vehicle.

– Tighten the wheel bolts **firmly** in diagonal sequence with the box spanner.

– Replace the **hub cap**. ■

After changing a wheel

After changing the wheel there are still tasks to complete.

– Put the tools and jack back in the luggage compartment.

– Place the wheel with the defective tyre in the luggage compartment and secure it.

– Check the tyre pressure of the newly fitted tyre as soon as possible.

– Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. The prescribed torque is 120 Nm.

Note

- If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing a wheel, they must be replaced before having the wheel bolt torque checked.
- In the interest of safety, drive at moderate speeds until the wheel bolt torque has been checked. ■

Wheel trims

The wheel trims must be removed to gain access to the wheel bolts.

Fig. 171 Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel trim

Removing

– Insert the **extraction hook** from the tools into the designated ring, located in one of the bolt hole covers of the wheel cover ⇒ fig. 171.

– Pull off the **hub cap**. ■

Wheel covers*

The wheel covers must be removed for access to the wheel bolts

Removing

– Remove the wheel cover using the wire hook.

– Hook this into one of the cut-outs of the wheel cover.

Fitting

– Fit the wheel cover onto the wheel rim by pressing it firmly. Put pressure initially on the point of the cut out for the valve. Then press the wheel cover onto the steel rim so that it engages all round. ■

Loosening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.

Fig. 172 Changing the wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Loosening

– Fit the **box spanner** as far as it will go over the wheel bolt.

– Grasp the box spanner by the end turn it about one full turn to the **left** ⇒ fig. 172.

Tightening

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the wheel bolt.

– Grasp the box spanner close to the end and turn the bolt to the right until it is secured.

– An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts. ▶

WARNING

Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack, loosening the wheel bolts more than one turn can result in an accident.

Note

- Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
- If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip. ■

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be raised with a jack to remove the wheel.

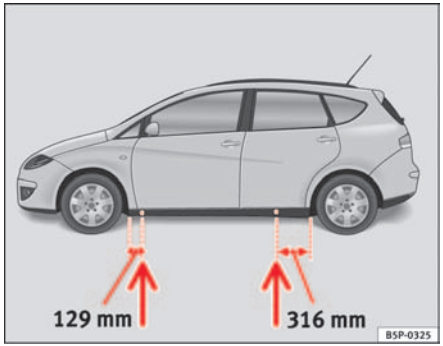

Fig. 173 The jacking points

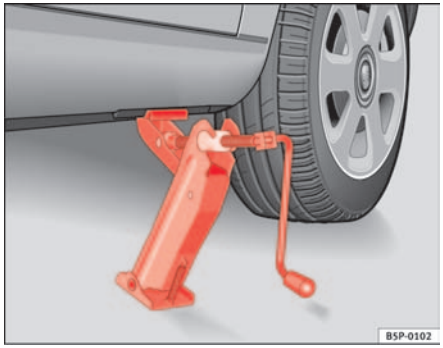

Fig. 174 Fitting the jack

– Locate the jacking point under the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇒ fig. 173.

– Wind up the jack under the jacking point until the arm of the jack is directly below the vertical rib under the door sill.

– Align the jack so that the arm of the jack fits around the rib under the door sill and the movable base plate of the jack is flat on the ground ⇒ fig. 174.

– Raise the vehicle until the defective wheel is just clear of the ground.

Recesses at the front and rear of the door sills mark the jacking points ⇒ fig. 173. A position has been made for each wheel. Do not fit the jack anywhere else.

An **unstable surface** under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Therefore, the jack must be fitted on solid ground offering good support. Use a large and stable base, if necessary. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.

WARNING

- **Take all precautions so that the base of the jack does not slip. Failure to do so could result in an accident.**
- **The vehicle can be damaged if the jack is not applied at the correct jacking points. There is also a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.** ■

Removing and fitting the wheel

For removal and fitting the wheel, the following tasks must be completed.

Fig. 175 Wheel change: Hexagon socket in screwdriver handle to turn the wheel bolts after they have been loosened

Change the wheel as described below after loosening the wheel bolts and raising the vehicle with the jack.

Removing a wheel

– Unscrew the bolts using the **hexagonal tool** in the handle of the screwdriver (vehicle tool) and place them on a clean surface ⇒ fig. 175.

Fitting a wheel

– Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle.

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before fitting the spare wheel, inspect the condition of the wheel and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before fitting the wheel.

The hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle makes it easier to turn the wheel bolts when they are loose. The reversible screwdriver blade should be removed when the tool is used for this purpose.

If tyres with a specific direction of rotation are fitted, note the direction of rotation.

Note

Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts. ■

Anti-theft wheel bolts

A special adapter is required to turn the anti-theft wheel bolts.

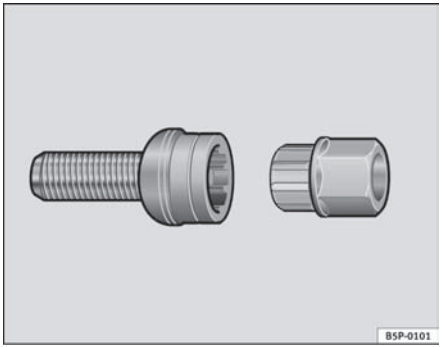

Fig. 176 Anti-theft wheel bolt

– Insert the adapter onto the wheel bolt and push it on as far as it will go ⇒ page 239, fig. 176.

– Fit the box spanner as far as it will go over the adapter.

– Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt as appropriate.

Code number

The code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt is stamped on the front of the adapter.

The code number should be noted and kept in a safe place, as it is only by using the code number that a duplicate adapter can be obtained from an Authorised Service Centre. ■

Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern must be fitted so that they rotate in the correct direction.

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when fitting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

If, in an emergency, you have to fit the spare wheel so it rotates in the wrong direction, you must drive extremely carefully. The tyre will not give optimum performance. This is particularly important when driving on wet roads.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction. ■

Tyre repair kit (Tyre-Mobility-System)*

General Observations and safety advice

Your vehicle is equipped with the tyre repair kit called the **Tyre mobility system**.

Beneath the floor of the stowage compartment there is a **sealant** and a **compressor** which should be used in case of puncture.

The Tyre Mobility System will allow you to safely repair damage to a tyre by penetration of a foreign object to 4mm diameter.

The foreign object can be left inside the tyre.

The sealant comes with instructions for use.

There is also a guide to using the compressor.

WARNING

- **The sealant should not be used if the tyre has been damaged as a result of going flat.**
- **Follow the instructions for your safety and use on the compressor and the sealant packaging.**
- **Do not drive at more than 80 km/h, avoid accelerating or braking hard or taking curves at high speed.**
- **A tyre that has been repaired with sealant should only be used provisionally, and for a short time Therefore, your car should be taken carefully to the nearest specialised workshop.**

For the sake of the environment

If you want to dispose of the sealant bottle, go to a company that treats waste products. ▶

Note

Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound. ■

Preparation work

What you must do before changing a wheel.

- If you have a flat tyre or puncture, park the vehicle as far away from the flow of traffic as possible.
- Apply the **handbrake** firmly.
- Engage the **first gear**, or put the selector lever to position **P** for those vehicles with an automatic gearbox.
- All passengers must **leave** the vehicle. They should wait in a safe area (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).
- Check whether the puncture can be mended using the Tyre Mobility System “General observations and safety advice.”
- Unscrew cap from the valve of the affected wheel.
- Take the **tyre repair kit** from the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Put the hazard warning lights on and place the warning triangle in position. This is for your own safety and also warns other road users.

Caution

Take the utmost caution when repairing a flat tyre on a gradient.

Note

Please observe legal requirements when doing so. ■

Repairing the puncture

To repair the puncture, once the preliminary tasks are done, follow these steps.

Apply the sealant

- The instructions for using the sealant correctly are on the packaging

Inflate the tyres.

- Remove the compressor and hose.
- Tighten the fastening nut onto the tyre valve.
- Connect the compressor power supply to the 12 Volt socket.
- Connect the compressor and check the tyre pressure with the pressure gauge.

Finish the repair

- Remove the compressor hose from the valve.
- Check the cap on the tyre valve.
- Disconnect the compressor from the vehicle mains.

– Put the tools back in the luggage compartment.

Note

The compressor should not operate more than 6 minutes. ■

Fuses

Changing a fuse

If a fuse has blown it must be replaced

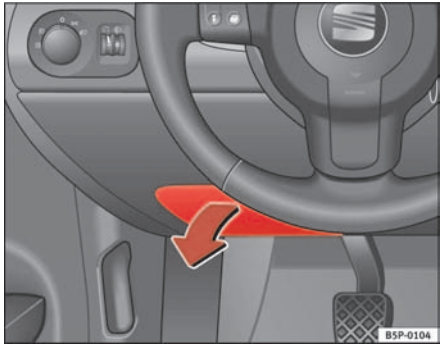

Fig. 177 Left side of dash panel: Fuse box cover

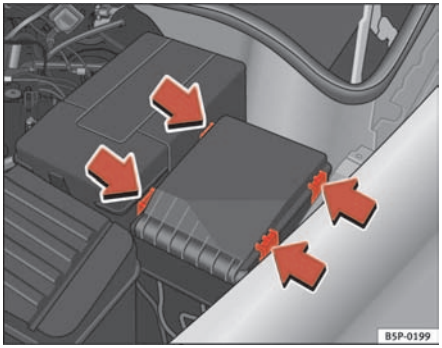

Fig. 178 Fuse box cover in engine compartment

Fuse cover underneath the steering wheel

– Switch off the ignition and the component concerned.

– Identify the fuse for the failed component ⇒ page 244.

– Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover, fit it onto the blown fuse and pull the fuse out.

– Replace the blown fuse (which will have a melted metal strip) with a new fuse of the same ampere rating.

Fuse cover in engine compartment

– Switch off the ignition and the component concerned.

– Prise off the fuse cover in the engine compartment by pressing the tabs towards the centre of the cover ⇒ fig. 178.

– Identify the fuse for the failed component ⇒ page 244. ▶

– Take the plastic clip from inside the fuse cover (at left-hand end of the dash panel), fit it onto the blown fuse and pull the fuse out.

– Replace the blown fuse (which will have a melted metal strip) with a new fuse of the same ampere rating.

– Carefully fit the fuse cover back on to ensure no water can enter the fuse box.

The individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. The fuses are located behind a cover at the left-hand end of the dash panel and on the left-hand side of the engine compartment.

The electric windows are protected by **circuit breakers**. These reset automatically after a few seconds when the overload (caused for example by frozen windows) has been corrected.

Colour coding of fuses

Color	Amperes
light brown	5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
natural (white)	25
green	30
orange	40
red	50
white	80

Color	Amperes
blue	100
grey	150
violet	200

WARNING

Never “repair” damaged fuses and never replace them with fuses with a higher rating. Failure to comply could result in fire. This could also cause damage to other parts of the electrical system.

Note

- If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- If you replace a fuse with a stronger fuse, you could cause damage to another location in the electrical system.
- Always keep some spare fuses in the vehicle. These are available from SEAT dealers. ■

Fuses on left side of dash panel

Fuses

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
1	Vacant	
2	Vacant	
3	Vacant	
4	Vacant	
5	Vacant	
6	Vacant	
7	Vacant	
8	Vacant	
9	Airbag	5
10	Vacant	
11	Vacant	
11	After sales kit	5
12	Xenon left headlight	10
13	Heating controls / ESP, ASR switch/ Reverse/Preinstalled telephone	5
14	ABS/ESP switchboard / Engine / Headlights / Trailer switchboard / Light switch/ Instrument panel	10
15	Headlight regulator switchboard / Heated windscreen / Instrument lights / Diagnosis switchboard	10
16	Xenon right headlight	10
17	D2L Engine (2.0l 147 kW 4-speed TFSI)	10
18	Vacant	
19	Vacant	
20	Park Pilot (Parking assistant) / Gear lever/ ESP switchboard	10

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
21	Cable control unit	7,5
22	Interior alarm sensor/ Alarm horn	5
23	Diagnosis/ Rain sensor/ Light switch	10
24	Vacant	
25	Connection switchboard automatic gearbox	20
26	Vacuum pump	20
27	Vacant	
28	Headlight washer motor / Wiring switchboard	20
29	Vacant	
30	Power socket / Lighter	20
31	Vacant	
32	Vacant	
33	Heater	40
34	Vacant	
35	Vacant	
36	2.0l engine 147 kW	10
37	2.0l engine 147 kW	10
38	2.0l engine 147 kW	10
39	Trailer control unit (coupling)	15
40	Trailer control unit (indicators, brakes and left side)	20
41	Trailer control unit (fog light, reversing light and right side)	20
42	Kit (assisted solution) trailer hook	15
43	Vacant	
44	Rear window heater	25

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
45	Front electric window raisers	30
46	Rear electric window raisers	30
47	Engine (Fuel control, petrol relay)	15
48	Convenience controls	20
49	Heating controls	40
50	Heated seats	30
51	Sunroof	20
52	Headlight washer system	20
53	Kit (assisted solution) trailer hook	20
54	Taxi (Taximeter power supply)	5
55	Kit (assisted solution) trailer hook	20
56	Taxi (transmitter power supply)	15
57	Vacant	
58	Central locking control unit	30

Some of the electrical items listed in the table are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Please note that the above list, while correct at the time of printing, is subject to alterations. If discrepancies should occur, please refer to the sticker on the inside of the fuse cover for the correct information for your model. ■

Fuses layout, engine compartment, left part

Fuses

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
1	Windscreen wipers	30
2	Steering column	5
3	Cable control unit	5
4	ABS	30
5	AQ gearbox	15
6	Instrument panel	5
7	Vacant	
8	Radio	15
9	Telephone	5
10	Main relay in the FSI / diesel engine compartment / injection module supply	5
	Main relay in the engine compartment D2L (2.0 FSI 147 kW)	10
11	Vacant	
12	Gateway	5
13	Petrol injection module supply	25
	Diesel injection module supply	30
14	Coil	20
15	Engine T71 / 20 FSI	5
	Pump relay	10
16	ADS pump	30
17	Horn	15
18	Vacant	

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
19	Clean	30
20	Vacant	
21	Lambda probe	15
22	Brake pedal, speed sensor	5
23	Engine 1.6, main relay (relay n° 100)	5
	T 71 diesel EGR	10
	2.0 D2L High-pressure fuel pump	15
24	ARF, change valve	10
25	Right lighting	40
26	Left lighting	40
	1.6 SLP engine	40
	1.9 TDI Glow plug relay	50
28	KL15	40
29	Electric windows (front and back)	50
	Electric windows (front)	30
30	X - relief relay	40

Position in engine compartment: side box

Fuses

Number	Electrical equipment	Amperes
B1	Alternator ‹ 140 W	150
	Alternator › 140 W	200
C1	Power steering	80
D1	Multi-terminal voltage supply “30”. Internal fuse box	100
E1	Ventilator › 500 W / Ventilator ‹ 500 W	80/50
F1	PTCs (Supplementary electrical heating using air)	100
G1	Trailer fuse voltage supply in internal fuse box	50
H1	Central locking control unit (4F8 with autolock)	

Some of the electrical items listed in the table are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Please note that the above list, while correct at the time of printing, is subject to alterations. ■

Bulb change

General notes

Before changing any bulb first turn off the equipment concerned.

Do not touch the bulb glass. Fingerprints vaporise in the heat, causing a reduction in the bulb life and condensation on the mirror surface, thus reducing efficiency.

A bulb should only be replaced by one of the same type. The type is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

It is highly recommended to keep a box of spare bulbs in the vehicle. At the very least, the bulbs that most affect road safety should have spares in the vehicle.

Main headlights

Dipped beam - H7

Main beam - H1

Position - W5W

Turn signals - PY21W

Xenon headlights[22] /directional

Dipped and full beam - D1S[23]

Flashing and extra full beam - H1

Position W5W

Turn signals PY21W

Fog lights

Fog lights - H3

Fixed rear light

Stop/Position - P21W[24]

Turn signals - P21W

Rear tailgate light unit

Anti fog (driver side) - P21W

Reverse (passenger side) - P21W

Position - W5W

Indicator

Indicator - W5W

Registration plate light

Registration plate light - C5W

[22] On this type of headlight, the bulb changes must be made by the SEAT dealer, given that complex elements must be removed from the vehicle and a reset must be made on the automatic control system incorporated.

[23] The Xenon bulbs discharge 2.5 times the light flux and have an average lifespan of 5 times more than that of halogen bulbs, this means that, except due to unusual circumstances, there is no need to change the bulbs for the whole life of the vehicle.

[24] Electronically controlled single filament bulb for Stop/side bulbs. If the bulb blows it will not work in either position or Stop position

Note

- Due to the difficulty in accessing the lamps, any replacement work should be done by a SEAT dealer. However, the following is a description of how to change the bulbs except for the fog lights and interior bulbs. ■

Main headlight lamps

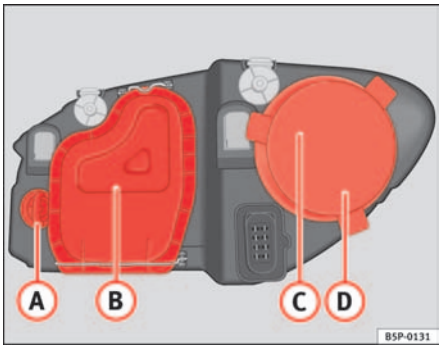

Fig. 179 Main headlight lamps

(A) Turn signals
(B) Dipped headlights
(C) Main beam headlights
(D) Side lights ■

Turn signal lamps

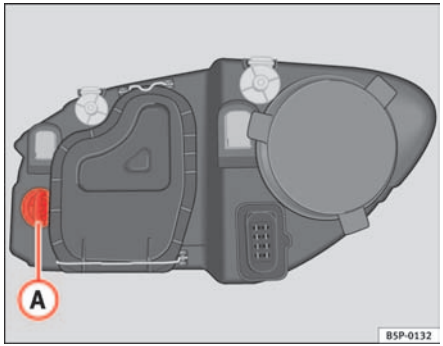

Fig. 180 Turn signal lamps

- Raise the bonnet.
- Rotate the lamp holder ⇒ fig. 180 (A) to the left and pull.
- Remove the bulb by pressing on the lamp holder and rotating at the same time to the left.
- Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

Dipped beam lights

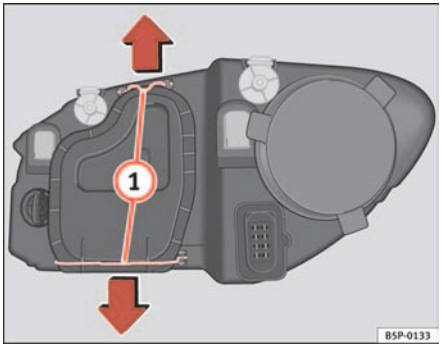

Fig. 181 Dipped head-lights

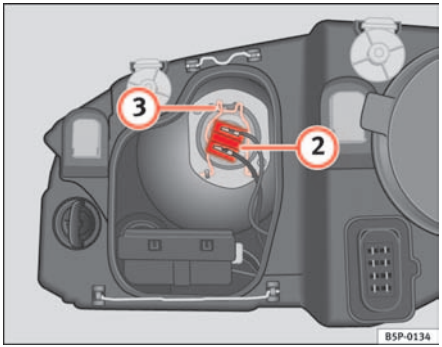

Fig. 182 Dipped head-lights

- Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the loops ⇒ page 251, fig. 181 (1) in the direction of the arrow and remove the cover.

– Remove the connector ⇒ page 251, fig. 182 (2) from the bulb.

– Disengage the retainer spring ⇒ page 251, fig. 182 (3) pressing inwards and to the right.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that the rim of the attachment plate is on the reflector cut-out. ■

Main beam lights

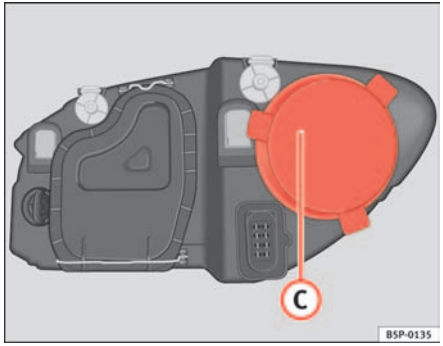

Fig. 183 Main beam headlights

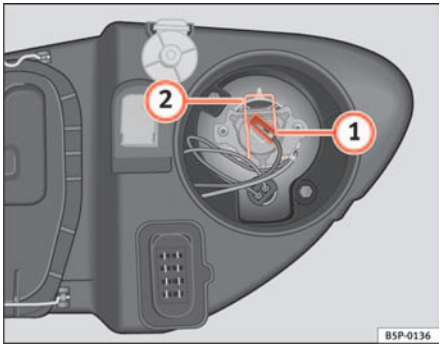

Fig. 184 Main beam headlights

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the cover ⇒ fig. 183 (C) by pulling on this.

– Remove the connector ⇒ fig. 184 (1) from the bulb.

– Press the spring ⇒ fig. 184 (2) inwards and to the right.

– Extract the bulb and fit the replacement so that it sits correctly into the cut-out on the reflector.

– Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

Side lights

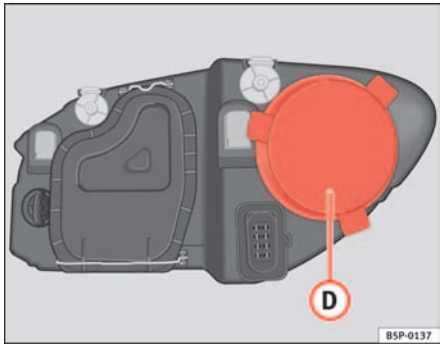

Fig. 185 Side lights

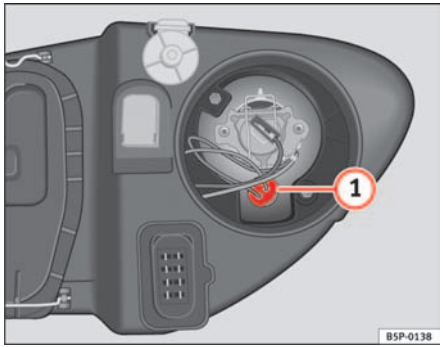

Fig. 186 Side lights

– Raise the bonnet.

– Remove the cover ⇒ fig. 185 (D) by pulling on this.

– Extract the lamp holder ⇒ fig. 186 (1) outwards.

– Replace the bulb by pulling this out and inserting the replacement.

– Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

Rear lights

- On the body
  - Indicator, side and brake light
- On the tailgate
  - Left hand side: side and foglight.
  - Right hand side: side and reverse light.

Indicator, side and brake lights on the bodywork

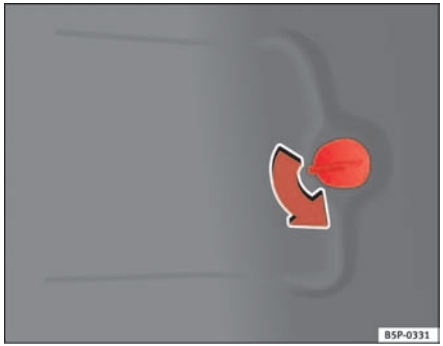

Fig. 187 Lights on vehicle body

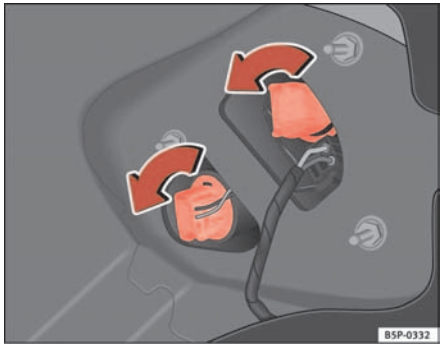

Fig. 188 Lights on vehicle body

– Remove the cover of the luggage compartment side panel ⇒ fig. 187.

– Turn the lamp holder anti-clockwise ⇒ fig. 188.

– Extract the failed bulb and change it for a new one.

– To refit follow the steps in reverse order, taking special care when fitting the lamp holder. ■

Position light, fog light and reverse light on the tailgate

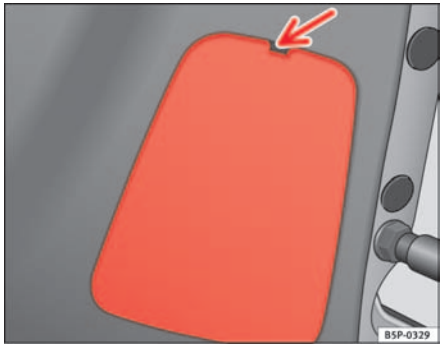

Fig. 189 Lights on the tailgate

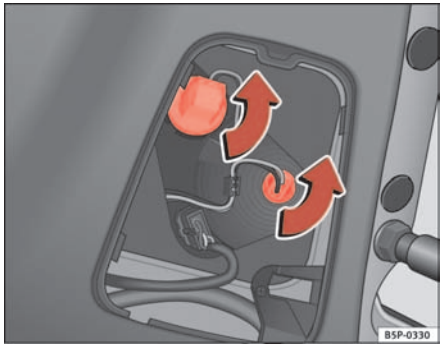

Fig. 190 Side lights

Side lights

– Open the tailgate.

– Pull the cover off.

– Take the lampholder out pressing on the securing pins and extract it outwards.

– Extract the failed bulb and change it for a new one.

– To refit follow the steps in reverse order, taking special care when fitting the lamp holder.

Fog lights and reverse lights

– Open the tailgate.

– Pull the cover off.

– Turn the lamp holder anti-clockwise.

– Extract the failed bulb and change it for a new one.

– Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

Side indicators

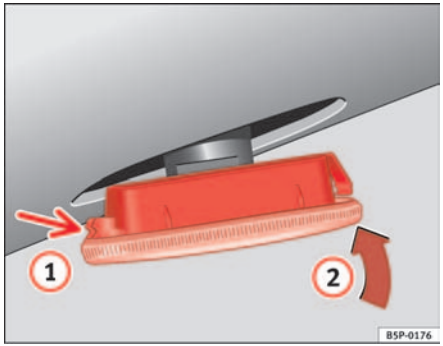

Fig. 191 Indicator

- Press the indicator to the left or to the right to remove the lamp.
- Remove the lamp holder from the indicator.
- Remove the failed glass bulb and replace with a new bulb.
- Insert the lamp holder in the indicator guide until it clicks into place.
- First place the indicator in the opening in the bodywork, fixing the tabs ⇒ fig. 191, arrow (1).
- Insert the lamp as shown by the arrow (2) ⇒ fig. 191. ■

Luggage compartment lights

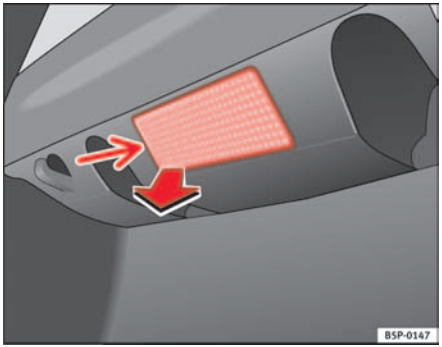

Fig. 192 Luggage compartment light

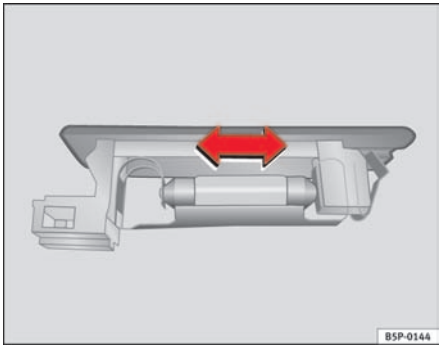

Fig. 193 Luggage compartment light

- Extract the tulip shaped fitting by pressing on the inside edge of this -arrow- using the flat side of a screwdriver ⇒ fig. 192. ▶

– Press the lamp sideways and remove it from the allotment ⇒ page 256, fig. 193. ■

Registration light

Fig. 194 Registration plate light

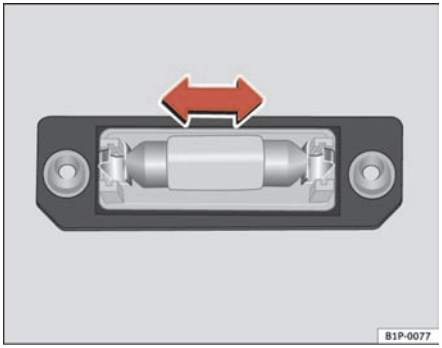

Fig. 195 Registration plate light

– To remove the bulb holder, unscrew the bolts ⇒ fig. 194.

– Remove the lamp, moving it in the direction of the arrow and outwards ⇒ fig. 195.

– Installation is done in the reverse order. ■

Sunroof light

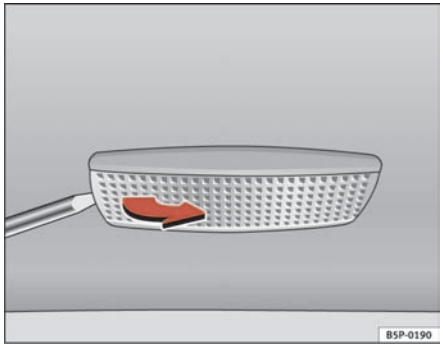

Fig. 196 Removing sunroof light

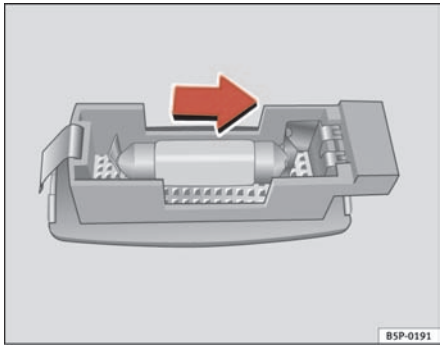

Fig. 197 Removing sunroof light

– Carefully remove the lamp, using the flat side of the screwdriver, as shown in the figure ⇒ fig. 197.

– Remove the lamp, moving it in the direction of the arrow and outwards ⇒ fig. 197. ■

Jump-starting

Jump leads

The jump lead must have a sufficient wire cross section.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

Jump leads

Jump leads must comply with the standard **DIN 72553** (see manufacturer's documentation). The wire cross section must be at least 25 mm^2 for petrol engines and at least 35 mm^2 for diesel engines.

Note

- The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicles electrical system. ■

How to jump start

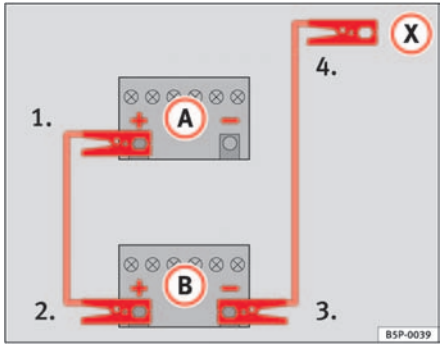

Fig. 198 How to connect the jump leads

In ⇒ fig. 198, the flat battery is (A) and the charged battery (B).

Jump lead terminal connections

– Switch off the ignition on both vehicles ⇒ ⚠.

1. Connect one end of the red jump lead to the positive ⇒ fig. 198 (+) terminal of the vehicle with the flat battery ⇒ ⚠.
2. Connect the other end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Connect one end of the black jump lead to the negative terminal (-) on the battery of the vehicle providing assistance.
4. Connect the other end of the black jump lead (X) to a solid metal component which is bolted on to the engine block, or onto the engine block itself of the vehicle with the flat battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery ⇒ ⚠.
5. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting

6. Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
7. Start the engine of the car with the flat battery and wait one or two minutes until the engine is “running”.

Removing the jump leads

8. Before you remove the jump leads, switch off the headlights (if they are switched on).
9. Turn on the heater blower and rear window heater in the vehicle with the flat battery. This helps minimise voltage peaks that are generated when the leads are disconnected.
10. When the engine is running, disconnect the leads in reverse order to the details given above.

Connect the battery clamps so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine fails to start, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about half a minute.

WARNING

- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇒ page 208, “Working in the engine compartment”.**
- **The battery providing assistance must have the same voltage as the flat battery (12V) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint on battery). Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Never use jump leads when one of the batteries is frozen. Danger of explosion! Even after the battery has thawed, battery acid could leak and cause chemical burns. If a battery freezes, it should be replaced.**
- **Keep sparks, flames and lighted cigarettes away from batteries, danger of explosion. Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the jump leads.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the flat battery. The gas emitted from the battery could be ignited by sparks. Danger of explosion.**
- **Do not attach the negative cable from the other vehicle to parts of the fuel system or to the brake line.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle, this can cause a short circuit.**
- **Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not bend over the batteries. This could result in chemical burns.**

Note

The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. ■

Towing and tow-starting

Tow-starting

The use of jump leads is preferable to tow-starting.

We recommend that you do **not** tow-start your vehicle. Jump-starting is preferable ⇒ page 258.

However, if your vehicle has to be tow-started:

– Engage the 2nd or the 3rd gear.

– Keep the clutch pressed down.

– Switch on the ignition.

– Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.

– As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch and move the gear lever into neutral. This helps to prevent driving into the towing vehicle.

WARNING

The risk of accidents is high when tow-starting. The vehicle being towed can easily collide with the towing vehicle.

Caution

When tow-starting, fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it. ■

Towing eyes

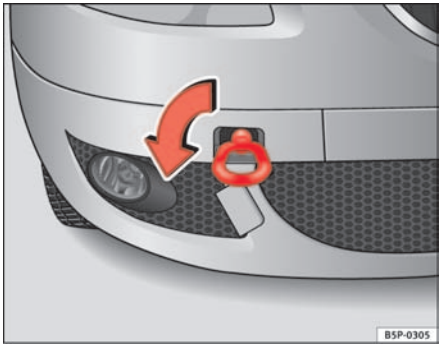

Fig. 199 The front right section of the vehicle: Fitting the front towing eye

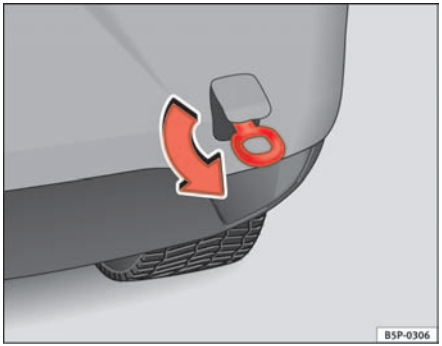

Fig. 200 Fitting the towing eye to the rear of the vehicle

Please observe the following points if you use a tow-rope: ▶

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

– Drive slowly at first until the tow-rope is taut. Then accelerate gradually.

– Begin and change gears cautiously. If you are driving an automatic vehicle, accelerate gently.

– Remember that the brake servo and power steering are not working in the vehicle you are towing. Brake earlier than you would normally, but with a more gentle pressure on the brake.

Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle

– Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

Fitting the towing eye

– Take the towing ring from the onboard tools.

– Pull the lower front cover down and leave the cover hanging on the vehicle.

– Remove the cover of the screw hole, insert a screwdriver into the lower slot and lever gently.

– Screw the towing eye as shown by arrow *anti-clockwise* to the limit position in the front ⇒ page 261, fig. 199 or rear ⇒ page 261, fig. 200 threaded hole.

Tow-rope or tow-bar

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar.

A tow-rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the loading on both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing eyes provided or a towing bracket.

Driving style

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow-start or tow away another vehicle.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

The ignition of the vehicle being towed must be switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking and also to allow the use of the turn signals, horn, windscreen wipers and washers.

As the brake servo does not work if the engine is not running, you must apply considerably more pressure to the brake pedal than you normally would.

As the power assisted steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than you normally would.

Towing vehicles with an automatic gearbox

- Put the selector lever into position “N”.
- Do not drive faster than 50 km/h when towing a vehicle.
- Do not tow further than 50 km.
- If a breakdown vehicle is used, the vehicle must be towed with the front wheels raised.

Note

- Observe legal requirements when towing or tow-starting.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights of both vehicles. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.
- For technical reasons, vehicles with an automatic gearbox must not be tow-started.

- If damage to your vehicle means that there is no lubricant in the gearbox, you must raise the drive wheels while the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle has to be towed more than 50 km, the front wheels must be raised during towing, and towing should be carried out by a qualified person.
- The steering wheel is locked when the vehicle has no electrical power. The vehicle must then be towed with the front wheels raised. Towing should be carried out by a qualified person.
- The towing eye should always be kept in the vehicle. Please refer to the notes on ⇒ page 261, “Tow-starting”. ■

Technical Data

General notes on the technical data

What you should be aware of

General notes

All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over this data.

All data in these documents are valid for the basic model as offered in Spain. The vehicle data card included in the inspection and maintenance schedule in the vehicles registration documents show which engine is installed in the vehicle.

The figures may be different if additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

Abbreviations used in this paragraph of the Technical Data

Abbreviation	Meaning
kW	Kilowatt, engine power measurement.
bhp	Brake horse power, formerly used to denote engine power
at rpm	Revolutions per minute - engine speed.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
l/100 km	Fuel consumption in litres per 100 kilometres
g/km	Carbon dioxide emissions in grams per kilometre.
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
CN	Cetane number, indication of the ignition quality of the diesel.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.

Vehicle identification data

The most important data are given on the type plate and the vehicle data sticker.

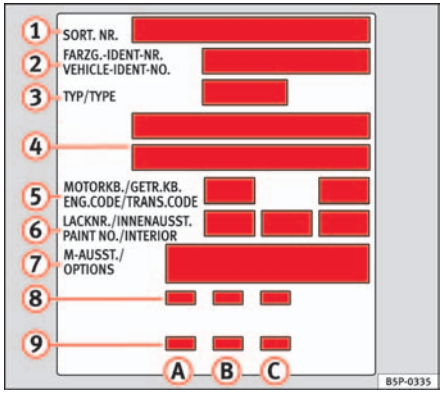

Fig. 201 Vehicle data sticker – luggage compartment

Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

Type plate

The type plate is located on the left rib inside the engine compartment.

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen. This is located on the left-hand side of the vehicle in the lower area of the windscreen. It is also located on the right-hand side of the engine compartment.

Vehicle data

The data sticker is placed on the inside of the spare wheel recess in the luggage compartment.

The following information can be found in the vehicle information ⇒ fig. 201.

This vehicle data is also included in the maintenance program.

1. Production control number
2. Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
3. Model code number
4. Model designation / engine power output
5. Engine and gearbox code letters
6. Paint number / interior trim code
7. Optional equipment codes
8. Consumption figures.
9. CO_2 emissions.

The data from 2 to 9 are also included in the maintenance program

Consuption figures and CO_2 emissions.

A Consumption (l/100 km) / CO_2 Emissions (g/km) urban

B Consumption (l/100 km) / CO_2 Emissions (g/km) motorway

C Consumption (l/100 km) / CO_2 Emissions (g/km) mixed

How are the figures measured?

Fuel consumption

The consumption and emission details shown on the vehicle data sticker differ from one vehicle to another.

Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions for the vehicle can be checked on the vehicle data sticker.

The fuel consumption and emissions figures given are based on the weight category of the car, which is determined according to the engine/gearbox combination and the equipment fitted.

The consumption figures are calculated in accordance with the EC fuel consumption test requirements 1999/100/EC. These test requirements specify a realistic test method based on normal everyday driving.

The following test conditions are the basis for the performance of the test:

Urban cycle	The urban cycle starts with an engine cold start. City driving is then simulated.
Extra urban cycle	In the extra urban cycle the vehicle undergoes frequent acceleration and braking in all gears, as in normal everyday driving. The road speed ranges from 0 to 120 km/h.
Combined	The average overall consumption is calculated with a weighting of around 37% for the urban cycle and 63% for the extra urban cycle.
CO_2 emissions	The exhaust gases are collected during both driving cycles to calculate carbon dioxide emissions. The gas composition is then analysed to evaluate the CO_2 content and other emissions.

Note

- Actual consumption may vary from quoted test values, depending on personal driving style, road and traffic conditions, the weather and the condition of the vehicle. ■

Weights

Kerb weight refers to the basic model with a fuel tank filled to 90% capacity and without optional extras. The figure quoted includes 75 kg to allow for the weight of the driver.

For special versions and optional equipment fittings or for the addition of accessories, the weight of the vehicle will increase ⇒ ⚠.

WARNING

- **Please note that the centre of gravity may shift when transporting heavy objects; this may affect the vehicle's handling and lead to an accident. Always adjust your speed and driving style to suit road conditions and requirements.**
- **Never exceed the gross axle weight rating or the gross vehicle weight rating. If the allowed axle load or the allowed total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.** ■

Towing a trailer

Trailer weights

Trailer weights

The trailer weights and drawbar loads approved are selected in intensive trials according to precisely defined criteria. The approved trailer weights are valid for vehicles in *EU* for maximum speeds of 80 km/h (in certain circumstances up to 100 km/h). The figures may be different in other countries. All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data ⇒ ⚠.

Drawbar load

The *maximum* permitted weight exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed **75 kg**.

In the interest of road safety, we recommend that you always tow approaching the maximum drawbar load. The response of the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small.

If the maximum permissible drawbar load cannot be met (e.g. with small, empty and light-weight single axle trailers or tandem axle trailers with an axle base of less than 1 metre), at least 4% of the actual trailer weight is a legal stipulation for a drawbar load.

WARNING

- **For safety reasons, you should not drive at speeds above 80 km/h when towing a trailer. This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted.**
- **Never exceed the maximum trailer weights or the draw bar loading. If the permissible axle load or the permissible total weight is exceeded, the driving characteristics of the vehicle may change, leading to accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle.** ■

Wheels

Tyre pressure, snow chains, wheel bolts

Tyre pressures

The sticker with the tyre pressure values can be found on the inside of the tank flap. The tyre pressure values given there are for *cold* tyres. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced ⇒ ⚠. ▶

Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the *front wheels*.

Consult the chapter “wheels” of this manual.

Wheel bolts

After the wheels have been changed, the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts should be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ⇒ ⚠. The tightening torque for steel and alloy wheels is **120** Nm.

WARNING

- **Check the tyre pressure at least once per month. Correct tyre pressure is very important. If the tyre pressure is too high or too low, there is an increased danger of accidents, particularly at high speeds.**
- **If the torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen whilst the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads could be damaged.**

Note

We recommend that you ask your Authorised Service Centre for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size. ■

Technical Data

Checking fluid levels

From time to time, the levels of the different fluids in the vehicle must be checked. Never fill with incorrect fluids, to do so may cause serious damage to the engine.

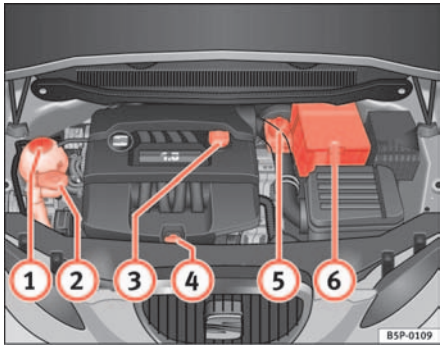

Fig. 202 Diagram for the location of the various elements

1. Radiator expansion tank
2. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Engine oil dipstick
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Vehicle battery (underneath the cover)

The checking and replenishment of the service fluids are carried out on the components mentioned above. These operations are described in the ⇒ page 208.

Overview

Further explanations, instructions and restrictions on the technical data are contained as of ⇒ page 265. ■

Petrol engine 1.4 litre 63 kW (86 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	63 (86)/ 5000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	132/ 3800
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1390
Compression		10,5 ± 0,3
Fuel		Premium unleaded 95 RON or regular unleaded 91 RON[a)]

a) With a slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	169
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	9,9
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	15,1

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1950
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1405
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	947
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1034
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	690
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1000

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	3,2 litres

Petrol engine 1.6 litre 75 kW (102 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	75 (102)/ 5600
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	148/ 3800
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1595
Compression		10,5 ± 0,5
Fuel		Premium unleaded 95 RON or regular unleaded 91 RON[a)]

a) With a slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	181
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	8,7
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	13,0

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1979
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1434
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	971
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1025
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	710
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1200

Engine oil capacity

Engine oil capacity with oil filter change.	4,8 litres

Petrol engine 2.0l 110 kW (150 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	110 (150)/ 6000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	200/ 3500
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1984
Compression		11,5-0,5
Fuel		Super Plus unleaded 98 RON or Premium unleaded 95 RON[a)]

[a)] With a slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	206
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	6,6
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	9,8

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	2034
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1485
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	1014
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1029
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	740
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1400

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	5,3 litres

Petrol engine 2.0 litre 147 kW (200 hp). Manual

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	147 (200)/ 5100 - 6000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	280/ 1800-5000
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1984
Compression		10,3-0,5
Fuel		Super Plus unleaded 98 RON or Premium unleaded 95 RON[a)]

[a)] With a slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	220
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	5,4
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	7,7

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	1960
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1507
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	1086
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1015
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	740
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1400

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	5,3 litres

Petrol engine 2.0 litre 147 kW (200 hp). Automatic

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	147 (200)/ 5100 - 6000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	280/ 1800-5000
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1984
Compression		10,3-0,5
Fuel		Super Plus unleaded 98 RON or Premium unleaded 95 RON[a)]

[a)] With a slight power loss

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	220
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	5,4
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	7,7

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	2127
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1582
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	1116
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1040
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	750
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1400

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	5,3 litres

Diesel engine 1.9 TDI 77 kW (105 bhp). With/without DPF

DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	77 (105) 4000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	250/1900
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/1896
Compression		19 ± 0,5
Fuel		Min 51 CZ

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	183
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	8,4
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	12,6

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	2064
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1519
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	1050
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1031
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	750
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1400

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	4,3

Diesel engine 2.0l 103 kW (140 bhp) With/without DPF

DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	103 (140)/ 4000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	320/ 1750 - 2500
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1968
Compression		18,5 ± 0,5
Fuel		Min 51 CZ

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	201
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	7,0
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	10,0

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	2089
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1544
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	1082
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1024
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	750
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1400

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	4.3 litres

Diesel engine 2.0l 103 kW (140 bhp) Automatic With/without DPF

DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	103 (140)/ 4000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	320/ 1750 - 2500
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1968
Compression		18,5 ± 0,5
Fuel		Min 51 CZ

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	201
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	6,7
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	10,0

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	2124
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1579
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	1112
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1020
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	750
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1400

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	4.3 litres

Diesel engine 2.0l 100 kW (136 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	100 (136)/ 4000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	320/ 1750 - 2500
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1968
Compression		18,5 ± 0,5
Fuel		Min 51 CZ

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	199
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	7,1
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	10,1

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	2089
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1544
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	1074
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1024
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	750
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1400

Engine oil capacity

Approximate engine oil capacity with oil filter change	4.3 litres

Diesel engine 2.0l 100 kW (136 bhp) Automatic

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	100 (136)/ 4000
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	320/ 1750 - 2500
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1968
Compression		18,5 ± 0,5
Fuel		Min 51 CZ

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	199
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	7,1
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	10,1

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	2124
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1579
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	1104
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1029
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	750
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1400

Engine oil capacity

Engine oil capacity with oil filter change.	4.3 litres

Diesel engine 2.0l 125 kW (170 bhp)

General engine data

Power output in kW (bhp)	rpm	125 (1170)/ 4200
Maximum torque	in Nm at rpm	350/ 1750 - 2500
No. of cylinders, capacity	in cm^3	4/ 1968
Compression		18,5 ± 0,5
Fuel		Min 51 CZ

Performance figures

Maximum speed	in km/h	211
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h	in sec.	6,3
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h	in sec.	8,9

Weights

Gross vehicle weight	in kg	2089
Weight in working order (with driver)	in kg	1544
Gross axle weight, front	in kg	1082
Gross axle weight, rear	in kg	1024
Permitted roof load	in kg	75

Trailer weights

With no brakes, gradients up to 12%	750
With brakes, gradients up to 12%	1400

Engine oil capacity

Engine oil capacity with oil filter change.	4.3 litres

Dimensions and capacities

Dimensions		
Length, width	4467 mm/ 1768 mm	
Height at kerb weight	1575 mm	
Front and rear projection	913 mm/ 976 mm	
Wheelbase	2578 mm	
Turning circle	10,7 m	
Track width[a)]	**Front**	**Rear**
	1527 mm	1506 mm
	1535 mm	1514 mm
Capacities		
Fuel tank	55 l. Reserve 7 l.	
Windscreen washer fluid container with headlight washer	3 l/ 5,5 l	
Tyre pressure		
Summer-grade tyres: The correct tyre pressure can be seen on the sticker on the inside of the tank flap. **Winter tyres:** The pressure of these tyres is the same as the summer tyre pressure plus 0.2 bar.		

a) This data will change depending on the type of wheel rim.

Index

A

ABS 180
Warning lamp 78
Accessories 201
Acoustic signal 20
Acoustic warning 161
Adjusting headlights
driving on the left 186, 188
driving on the right 186
Adjusting the seat belt height 27
Air conditioner*
2C-Climatronic* 154
Air conditioning system
General notes 158
Air conditioning* 151
Air recirculation mode
2C-Climatronic 157
Manual air conditioner 153
Airbag covers 36
Airbag system 30
Curtain airbags 41
Front airbags 34
Side airbags 37
Warning lamp 31
Airbags
Care 32
Disposal 32
Safety notes 32
Alarm system
Switching off 102
Alterations to the vehicle 201
Alternator
Warning lamp 79
Ambient temperature display 63
Anti-freeze 215
Anti-lock brake system 180
Warning lamp 78
Anti-theft alarm system 102
Switching off 102
Anti-theft wheel bolts 236
Aquaplaning 227
Ashtray* 142
Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror*
Activating the anti-dazzle function 124
Deactivating anti-dazzle function 124
Automatic car washes 193
Automatic gearbox / DSG automatic gearbox . 166
Automatic lighting 112
Automatic mode
2C-Climatronic 155
Automatic wiper/wash function for the rear window 123
Auxiliary audio connection: AUX-IN 144

B

Ball coupling 189
BAS 179
Battery
Changing 224
Charging 224
Winter conditions 223
Belt tension device
Disposal 28
Warning lamp 31
Belt tension devices 28
Biodiesel 207
Bonnet 210
Brake assist system 179
Brake fluid 221
Changing 222
Warning lamp 64
Brake pad wear indicator*
Indicator 82
Brake pads 183
Brake servo 179, 183
Brake system 221
Warning lamp 77
Brakes 183
Braking distance 183

Bulb changes
general notes 249
Bulb defect
warning lamp 76
Buzzer 116, 161

C

Car care
Exterior 193
Car care products 192
Car phone 202
Car washes 193
Catalytic converter 184
CD changer 134
Central locking 93
Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system* 95
Emergency unlocking system 95
Locking system for involuntary unlocking . . 95
Selective unlocking system* 94
Central locking button
Central locking 97
unlocking 97
Central locking system
Automatic speed dependent locking and unlocking system* 95
Centre arm rest 134
Cetane number 207
Changing gear
See Manual gearbox 165
Changing the lamps
Main headlight lamps 250
rear lights 253
Changing the main headlight lamps
dipped beam lights 251
main beam lights 252
Side lights 253
turn signal lamps 251
Changing the rear light lamps
Position light, fog light and rear light on the tailgate 255
Changing the rear lights
Indicator, side and brake lights on the bodywork 254
luggage compartment lights 256
Changing windscreen wiper blades 219
Chassis number 266
Checking 224
Checking battery electrolyte level 224
Checking engine oil level 213
Child safety 46
Child seat 48
Categorisation in groups 48
Group 1 49
Group 2 49
Group 3 49
Groups 0 and 0+ 48
Safety notes 47
Securing 50
Child seats
ISOFIX and Toptether system 51
on the front passenger seat 31
Cigarette lighter* 142
Cinturones de seguridad 19
testigo de control 19
Cleaning alloy wheels 197
Cleaning and caring for your vehicle 192
Cleaning chrome 196
Cleaning cloth seat covers 199
Cleaning dash panel 198
Cleaning engine compartment 198
Cleaning fabric trim 199
Cleaning leather 199
Cleaning plastic parts 198
Cleaning seat belts 200
Cleaning steel wheels 196
Cleaning windows 195
Cleaning wooden trim 199
Climatic* 151
Climatronic
General notes 158
Clock 58
Clothes hook 137
Cockpit 55
Conector para el iPod de Apple 144
Control
Light switches 111
Control lamps 72
Control lighting 55

Controls
Electric windows 106
Convenience closing
Sliding/tilting roof 109
Windows 108
Convenience opening
Windows 108
Coolant 215, 216
Warning lamp 64
Coolant Level 216
Coolant level
warning light 75
Coolant Loss 216
Coolant temperature
Display 57
Safety instructions 76
Covering headlights
driving on the left 188
Cruise control system 174
Warning lamp 77
Cruise control*
Turning off the cruise control system 176
Curtain airbags 41
Description 41
Function 42
Safety notes 42

D

Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 31
Diesel 207
Diesel engine
Winter driving 208
Diesel engine particulate filter* 185
Differential lock 182
Differential lock fault (EDL)
warning lamp 78
Digital clock 58
Dipped headlights 111
Disabling front passenger airbag
Safety notes 45
Disabling the airbag
Disabling front passenger airbag 44
Display (without warning or information texts) . 59
Displays in the Multi-function display
Memory displays 62
Door lock cylinders 196
Door release lever 55
Doors
Childproof locks 98
Warning lamp 82
Drawer 134
Drinks holders at the front 138
Drive wheels traction control system 180
Driving
Driving abroad 185
With a trailer 188, 190
Driving abroad 185
Headlights 186
Driving economically 190
Driving programs 167
Driving safety 8
Driving with an automatic gearbox / DSG automatic gearbox* 168
Driving with respect for the environment 190
Duplicate keys 99
Dust filter 158
Dynamic headlight range control 113

E

EDL 182
EDS
Warning lamp 78
Electric steering system
warning light 82
Electrical sockets 143
Electronic differential lock 182
Warning lamp 78
Electronic immobiliser 83, 162
warning message 64
Electronic stabilisation program 181
Electronic stabilisation programme 81
Description 160
Warning lamp 161
Electronic stabilisation programme (ESP)
warning lamp 81
emergency manual locking 96
Emergency opening
Doors 102

Emission control system
warning lamp 81
Engine
Running in 183
Engine compartment
Working in the engine compartment 208
Engine coolant 215
Engine fault
Warning lamp 81
Engine management
Warning lamp 81
Engine oil 211
Changing 215
Checking level 213
Oil properties 212
Specifications 211
Topping up 214
Engine oil dipstick 213
Engine oil pressure
Warning lamp 64, 78
Environmental tip
Avoiding pollution 206
ESP 81, 181
Example of menu use
Open the configuration menu 67
Program a speed limit warning 67
To activate and deactivate the speed limit warning 68
Examples of menu use
Open the main menu 67
Open the winter tyres menu 67
To close the winter tyres menu 68
Exterior mirrors 195
External aerial 202

F

Fastening rings 18
Fire extinguisher 145
Floor mats 16
Fog lights 111
Folding the seat backrests down 132
Foot brake
Warning lamp 82
Front airbags 34
Description 34
Function 35
Safety notes 37
Front interior light type 1
Switching light off 117
Switching light on 117
Front interior light type 2
Switching light off 117
Switching light on 117
Front passenger airbag deactivation 44
Front reading lights 118
Front seat adjustment
Lumbar support 130
Fuel
Diesel 207
Petrol 206
Fuel level
Indicator 57
Fuel reserve 75
Warning 64
Fuel Tank
Opening the fuel tank flap 205
Fuel tank
See Fuel reserve 75
Fuses 242

G

G 12 215
Gear shift pattern 165
General overview of the engine compartment 270
Glove compartment 133
Glow plug system 164
Warning lamp 81

H

Handbrake 171
Warning lamp 77, 171
Hazard warning lights 114
head restraints
Adjusting 128, 129
adjustment of the head restraint angle . . . 129
Removing 129

head restraints, correct adjustment 13
In-use and non-use positions 14
Headlight flasher 116
Headlight range control 113
Headlights 111
Driving abroad 186
Fog lights 111
Washer system 124
Heated front seats 131
Heated window
2C-Climatronic 155
Heating 149
High pressure cleaners 194
Horn 55

I

Identification number 266
Ignition key 161
Ignition lock 161
Indicator lights
indication lamp 76
Information texts in the display 63
Instrument and switch lighting 113
Instrument lighting 55
Instrument panel 55
Instrument panel menu
Configuration menu 69
Example of menu use 67
Lights and visibility menu 71
Instrument panel menus
Principal menu 65
Vehicle status menu 69
Instruments 56
Interior lights 117
Intermittent wipe, windscreen 120
ISOFIX and Toptether system 51

J

Jump leads 258
Jump-starting 258

K

Key tab 99
Keys 99

L

Lights 111
Load compartment
See Luggage compartment 17
Locks 196
Luggage compartment 17, 146
Luggage compartment cover 147
Luggage compartment retaining net 137

M

Main beam 116
Main beam headlights
Indicator lamp 76
Main headlight lamps 250
Manual gearbox 165
Manual mode
2C-Climatronic 156
Mesita plegable* 135
MFD 61
Mileage display 60
Mirrors
Exterior mirrors, electrical 125
Interior mirror 124
Make-up mirrors 120
Mobile phone 202
Modifications 201
Multi-function display 61
Multi-purpose* mobile stowage compartment 140
Closing 140
Fitting 139
Opening 140
Removal 139
Uses 140

N

Number of seats 19

O

Observations 185
Octane number 206

Oil 211
Oil change 215
Oil properties 212
One-touch opening and closing
Electric windows 107
Opening and locking 104
Overview
Control lamps 72
Instrument panel 55
Instruments 56
Warning lamps 72

P

Paintwork
Polishing 195
Waxing 194
Parking 172
Parking lights 116
Parts 201
Parts replacement 201
Pedals 16
Petrol 206
Trips to foreign countries 185
Petrol additives 206
Petrol engines, starting 162
Physical principles of a frontal collision 21
Plastic key tab 99
Plastic parts 195
Pollen filter 158
Puncture Proof tyres 227

R

Radio frequency remote control
Changing the battery 101
Radio navigation Steering wheel controls
audio + telephone version 88
audio version 88
Radio wave remote control 100
Rain sensor* 122
Rear drink holder*
Armrest* 138
Rear fog light
Indication lamp 111
Warning lamp 76
Rear interior lights 119
Rear lights 253
Rear reading lights 119
Rear seat bench 131
Rear window heating
Heating element wires 196
Rear window wiper 123
Rear-view mirror 124
Refuelling 205
Registration light 257
Remote control key
Buttons 100
Synchronising 101
Removing and fitting the wheel 239
Repairs
Airbags 32
Replacement keys 99
Rev counter 58
Reverse gear
Manual gearbox 165
RME fuel (biodiesel) 207
Roll-back function
Sliding/tilting roof 110
Windows 107
Roof aerial* 202
Roof carrier* 147
Rubber seals 196
Running in
Brake pads 183
Engine 183
Tyres 183
Running in tyres 183

S

Safe driving 7
Safety 8
Safety equipment 7
Safety instructions
Coolant temperature 76
Safety notes
Belt tension devices 28
Curtain airbags 42
Disabling front passenger airbag 45
Front airbags 37

Side airbags 40
Using child seats 47
Using seat belts 23
Safety system- safe 93
Seals 196
Seat adjustment 127, 130, 131
Seat belt position
Pregnant women 26
Seat belts 25
Seat belt release 27
Seat belts
adjustment 24
Incorrectly fastened 28
Not worn 22
Safety notes 23
Seat belts protect 23
Seat heating 131
Seats 19
Selective opening* 94
Selector lever locking 167
Selector lever positions 166
Service interval display 60
Shoes 16
Side airbags 37
Description 37
Function 39
Safety notes 40
Side lights 111
Sitting position
Driver 10
Front passenger 11
Incorrect sitting position 15
Passengers 12
Sitting position, occupants 10
Sliding/tilting roof 108
Snow chains 231, 269
Soot accumulation in the diesel engine particulate filter *
Indicator 79
Spare wheel* 233
Starting Petrol engines 163
Starting the engine 162, 163
After the fuel tank has been run dry 164
Steam cleaners 194
Steering 159
Steering lock 161
Steering wheel audio controls
audio + telephone version 84
audio version 84
Steering wheel controls
Lighting 92
Steering wheel height adjustment 159
Stowage area
Centre arm rest 134
Front seats 134
Other stowage areas 137
Stowage compartment
Front passenger side 133
Stowage in the luggage compartment 136
Sun visors 119
Sunroof 108
Sunroof blind
Sliding/tilting roof 109
Switch
Hazard warning lights 114
Switches
Electric windows 106
Electrical exterior mirrors 125
Sliding/tilting roof 108
Switching off the engine 164

T

Tailgate 104
Emergency opening 105
Warning lamp 82
Tank
fuel level 57
reserve indicator 57
tank capacity 57
TCS 180
TCS (Traction control system)
Warning lamp 79
Testigo del cinturón 19
The danger of not using the seat belt 22
Tightening torque of wheel bolts 269
Tools 232
Towing 261
Towing a trailer 188, 268
Towing bracket 189

Towing bracket, fitting 203
Towing eye 261
Tow-starting 261
Traction control system
warning lamp 79
Trailer turn signals
Indicator lamps 76
Warning lamp 116
Trailer weights 268
Trips, checklist 8
Turn signals 115
Warning lamp 76, 116
turning on the emergency indicators 115
Two-way radio 202
Type plate 266
Tyre Mobility-System (Tyre repair kit) 233
Tyre monitor indicator 80
Tyre pressure 226
Tyre pressures 268
Tyre repair kit 233, 240
Tyre-Mobility-System (Tyre repair kit) 240
Tyres and wheels
Dimensions 228
Tyres service life 226
Tyres tread depth 227
Tyres with directional tread pattern 225

U

Underbody sealant 197
USB* connection 145
Using the Tiptronic gear system 170

V

Vehicle battery 223
Vehicle data 266
Vehicle identification data 266
Vehicle identification number 266
Vehicle paint
Car care products 192
Vehicle tools
Storage 232
Vehicle wallet storage 133
Ventilation slits 17
Volumetric sensor*
Activation 103
Deactivation 103

W

Warning lamp 31
Warning lamps 72
Warning reports
Red 64
Yellow 64
Warning texts in the display 63
Warning triangle and first-aid kit 145
Washer fluid 218
Washing by hand 193
Washing the vehicle 193
Washing with high pressure cleaners 194
Water
warning 64
Water in the windscreen washer tank 218
Wear indicators 227
Wheel bolts 236, 269
Torque 230
Wheel change 234
Wheel trims 235
Wheels 225, 268
Why assume the correct sitting position? 30
Why should head restraints be correctly adjusted? 13
Why wear seat belts? 19, 21
Why wear seatbelts? 30
Windows 106
Windscreen washer fluid
Warning lamp 77
Windscreen wiper blades
Cleaning 196
Windscreen wipers 120
Changing blades 219
Changing the rear blade 220
Winter driving
Diesel engine 208
Winter tyres 230
Wiper/wash automatic function 120
Working in the engine compartment 208

SEAT S.A. is permanently concerned about continuous development of its types and models. For this reason we ask you to understand, that at any given time, changes regarding shape, equipment and technique may take place on the car delivered. For this reason no right at all may derive based on the data, drawings and descriptions in this current handbook.

All texts, illustrations and standards in this handbook are based on the status of information at the time of printing. Except for error or omission, the information included in the current handbook is valid as of the date of closing print.

Re-printing, copying or translating, whether total or partial is not allowed unless SEAT allows it in written form.

SEAT reserves all rights in accordance with the "Copyright" Act.

All rights on changes are reserved.

This paper has been manufactured using bleached non-chlorine cellulose.

© SEAT S.A. - Reprint: 15.09.06

Inglés 5P8012003J (07.06) (GT9)

SEAT

auto emoción